Contents
A-Z

OWNER'S MANUAL.

MINI COUNTRYMAN.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

MINI

Owner's Manual for the vehicle

Thank you for choosing a MINI.

The more familiar you are with your vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new MINI. Also use the Integrated Owner's Manual in your vehicle. It contains important information on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your MINI. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and road safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your MINI.

Any updates made after the editorial deadline can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

Get started now. We wish you driving fun and inspiration with your MINI.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

© 2017 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the written
consent of BMW AG, Munich.
US English ID5 X/17, 11 17 490
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached
without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

CONTENTS

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic or item is by using the index, refer to page 278.

The topics of Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be called up via the following Owner's Manuals: Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle, Online Owner's Manual, MINI Driver's Guide app.

6 Information

AT A GLANCE
16 Cockpit
20 Central Information Display (CID)
29 Voice activation system
32 General settings
43 Owner's Manual media

CONTROLS
50 Opening and closing
71 Settings
83 Transporting children safely
88 Driving
109 Displays
128 Lights
134 Safety
153 Driving stability control systems
158 Driving comfort
176 Climate control
184 Interior equipment
191 Storage compartments
194 Cargo area

DRIVING TIPS
204 Things to remember when driving
209 Saving fuel

MOBILITY
218 Refueling
220 Fuel
222 Wheels and tires
241 Engine compartment
243 Engine oil
247 Coolant
249 Maintenance
251 Replacing components
261 Breakdown assistance
267 Care

REFERENCE
274 Technical data
277 Appendix
278 Everything from A to Z

INFORMATION

USING THIS OWNER'S MANUAL

Orientation

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

An initial overview of the vehicle is provided in the first chapter.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the following Owner's Manuals:

- ▷ Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.
- ▷ Online Owner's Manual.
- ▷ MINI Motorer’s Guide App.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be obtained as printed book from the service center.

The topics of Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be called up via the following Owner's Manuals:

- ▷ Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.
- ▷ Online Owner's Manual.
- ▷ MINI Motorer’s Guide App.

ADDITIONAL SOURCES OF INFORMATION

Dealer’s service center

A dealer’s service center will be glad to answer questions at any time.

Internet

The Owner's Manual and general Information about MINI, for example on technology, are available on the Internet: www.miniusa.com.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

The Integrated Owner's Manual specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle. The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display. Additional information, refer to page 43.

MINI Motorer’s Guide app

The app specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle. The app can be displayed on smartphones and tablets. Additional information, refer to page 44.

Online Owner's Manual

The Online Owner's Manual specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle. The Online Owner's Manual can be displayed in any of today's browsers. Additional information, refer to page 45.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

SYMBOLS AND DISPLAYS

Symbols in the Owner's Manual

Symbol	Meaning
⚠	Precautions that must be followed. To avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.
◄	End of a specific item of information.
♻	Measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.
"..."	Control Display texts used to select individual functions.
›...‹	Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system..
››...‹‹	Answers generated by the voice activation system.

Action steps

Action steps to be carried out are presented as numbered list. The steps must be carried out in the defined order.

1. First action step.
2. Second action step.

Enumerations

Enumerations without mandatory order or alternative possibilities are presented as list with bullet points.

- ▷ First possibility.
- ▷ Second possibility.

Symbols on vehicle components

📖 Refers to the relevant section of this Owner's Manual for further information on a particular part or assembly.

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This Owner's Manual describes all models and all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series. Therefore, this Owner's Manual also describes and illustrates features and functions that are not available in your vehicle, for example because of the selected optional features or the country-specific version.

This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

For any options and equipment not described in this Owner's Manual, refer to the Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

Your dealer's service center is happy to answer any questions that you may have about the features and options applicable to your vehicle.

STATUS OF THE OWNER'S MANUAL

Basic information

The manufacturer of your vehicle pursues a policy of constant development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may differ from those in your vehicle.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the following Owner's Manuals:

- ▷ Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

- ▷ Online Owner's Manual.
- ▷ MINI Motorer’s Guide App.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

FOR YOUR OWN SAFETY

Manufacturer

The manufacturer of this MINI is Bayerische Motoren Werke Aktionengesellschaft, BMW AG.

Intended use

Follow the following when using the vehicle:

- ▷ Owner's Manual.
- ▷ Information on the vehicle. Do not remove stickers.
- ▷ Technical vehicle data.
- ▷ The traffic, speed, and safety laws where the vehicle is driven.
- ▷ Vehicle documents and statutory documents.

Warranty

Your vehicle is technically configured for the operating conditions and registration requirements applying in the country of first delivery, also known as homologation. If your vehicle is to be operated in a different country it might be necessary to adapt your vehicle to potentially differing operating conditions and registration requirements. If your vehicle does not comply with the homologation requirements in a certain country you may not be able to lodge warranty claims for your vehicle there. Further information on warranty is available from a dealer’s service center.

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, e. g. the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair work.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you entrust corresponding procedures to a MINI dealer’s service center. If you choose to use another service facility, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends use of a facility that performs work, for instance maintenance and repair, according to MINI specifications with properly trained personnel, referred to in this Owner's Manual as "another qualified service center or repair shop".

If work is performed improperly, for instance maintenance and repair, there is a risk of subsequent damage and related safety risks.

Parts and accessories

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends the use of parts and accessory products approved by the manufacturer of the MINI.

Approved parts and accessories, and advice on their use and installation are available from a MINI dealer's service center.

MINI parts and accessories were tested by the manufacturer of the MINI for their safety and suitability in MINI vehicles.

The manufacturer of your vehicle warrants genuine MINI parts and accessories.

The manufacturer of your vehicle does not evaluate whether each individual product from another manufacturer can be used with MINI vehicles without presenting a safety hazard, even if a country-specific official approval was issued. The manufacturer of your vehicle does not evaluate whether these products are suitable for MINI vehicles under all usage conditions.

California Proposition 65 Warning

California laws require us to state the following warning:

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, cer-

tain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. Your vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- ▷ New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- ▷ Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- ▷ Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty.
- ▷ Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- ▷ California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

Maintenance

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for required maintenance measures:

- ▷ MINI Maintenance system.
- ▷ Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models.
- ▷ Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

If the vehicle is not maintained according to these specifications, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle. Such damage is not covered by the MINI New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

DATA MEMORY

General information

Electronic control devices are installed in the vehicle. Some of these are necessary for the vehicle to function safely or provide assistance during driving, for instance driver assistance systems. Furthermore, control devices facilitate comfort or infotainment functions.

Electronic control devices contain data memories, which are able to temporarily or permanently store information about the condition of the vehicle, component load, maintenance requirements, technical events or faults.

This information generally records the state of a component, a module, a system or the environment, for instance:

- ▷ Operating states of system components, e.g., fill levels, tire inflation pressure, battery status.
- ▷ Status messages for the vehicle and its individual components, e.g., wheel rotational speed, wheel speed, deceleration, transverse acceleration, engaged safety belt indicator.

- Malfunctions and faults in important system components, for instance lights and brakes.
- Information on vehicle-damaging events.
- Responses by the vehicle to special situations such as airbag deployment or engagement of the stability control systems.
- Ambient conditions, e.g., temperature, rain sensor signals.

The data is required to perform the control device functions. Furthermore, it also serves to recognize and correct malfunctions, and helps the vehicle manufacturer to optimize vehicle functions. The majority of this data is transient and is only processed within the vehicle itself. Only a small proportion of the data is stored in event or fault memories and, if needed, in the vehicle key.

Reading out data

When servicing, for instance during repairs, service processes, warranty cases, and quality assurance measures, this technical information can be read out from the vehicle together with the vehicle identification number. A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop can read out the information. The socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis required by law in the vehicle is used to read out the data. The data is collected, processed, and used by the relevant organizations in the service network. The data documents the technical conditions of the vehicle, helps in locating faults and improving quality, and is transferred to the vehicle manufacturer, if needed.

Furthermore, the manufacturer has product monitoring duties to meet in line with product liability law. To fulfill these duties, the vehicle manufacturer needs technical data from the vehicle. Fault and event memories in the vehicle can be reset when a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop performs repair or servicing work.

Data on the scope of servicing work performed and maintenance records are stored in the vehicle by means of the service history and transferred to the vehicle manufacturer. The vehicle owner can contact a dealer's service center to object to the data being stored and transferred to the vehicle manufacturer. This objection applies for as long as the vehicle owner remains the proprietor of the vehicle.

Data entry and data transfer into the vehicle

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, some data can be transferred into the vehicle when using comfort and infotainment functions, for instance:

- Multimedia data such as music, films or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system.
- Address book data for use in conjunction with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system.
- Entered navigation destinations.
- Data on the use of Internet services.

This data can be stored locally in the vehicle or is found on a device that has been connected to the vehicle, e.g., a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player. If this data is stored in the vehicle, it can be deleted at any time. This data is only transmitted to third parties if expressly desired. This depends on the personal settings selected for using online services.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following comfort and individual settings can be stored in the vehicle and modified at any time, for instance:

- Settings for the seat and steering wheel positions.
- Suspension and climate control settings.
- Individual settings, for instance lighting in the car's interior.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

Control via mobile devices

Depending on the vehicle equipment, mobile devices connected to the vehicle, for instance smartphones, can be controlled via the vehicle control elements. The sound and picture from the mobile device can be played back and displayed through the multimedia system. Certain information is transferred to the mobile device at the same time. Depending on the type of connection, this includes, for instance position data and other general vehicle information. This optimizes the way in which selected apps, for instance navigation or music playback, work.

There is no further interaction between the mobile device and the vehicle, for instance active access to vehicle data. How the data will be processed further is determined by the provider of the particular app being used. The extent of the possible settings depends on the respective app and the operating system of the mobile device.

Services

General information

If the vehicle has a wireless network connection, this enables data to be exchanged between the vehicle and other systems. The wireless network connection is realized via an in-vehicle transmitter and receiver unit or via personal mobile devices brought into the vehicle, for instance smartphones. This wireless network connection enables 'online functions' to be used. These include online services and apps supplied by the vehicle manufacturer or by other providers.

Services from the vehicle manufacturer

Where online services from the vehicle manufacturer are concerned, the corresponding functions are described in the appropriate place, for instance the Owner's Manual or manufacturer's website. The relevant legal information pertaining to data protection is provided there too. Personal data may be used to perform online services. Data is exchanged over a secure connection, for instance with the IT systems of the vehicle manufacturer intended for this purpose. Any collection, processing, and use of personal data above and beyond that needed to provide the services must always be based on a legal permission, contractual arrangement or consent.

In addition, the vehicle manufacturer evaluates anonymized information on transport infrastructure and how the infotainment system is used. This information cannot be traced back to individual vehicles or people. Evaluating the data enables the manufacturer to further improve its products or services, for instance by incorporating the most up-to-date traffic bulletins. The data transfer feature can be deactivated in the vehicle. Certain services and functions, some of which are subject to a charge, can be deactivated by the driver. It is also possible to activate or deactivate the data connection as a whole. That is, with the exception of functions and services required by law such as Assist systems.

Services from other providers

When using online services from other providers, these services are the responsibility of the relevant provider and subject to their data privacy conditions and terms of use. The vehicle manufacturer has no influence on the content exchanged during this process. Information on the way in which personal data is collected and used in relation to services from third parties, the scope of such data, and its purpose, can be obtained from the relevant service provider.

EVENT DATA RECORDER EDR

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder EDR. The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in under-

standing how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were fastened.
- How far, if at all, the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

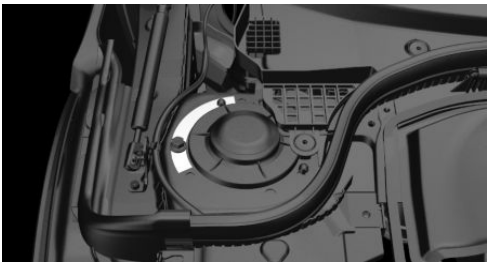
This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a nontrivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data, for instance name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded.

However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER



The vehicle identification number can be found in the engine compartment, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

The vehicle identification number can be found on the type label, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

The vehicle identification number can also be found behind the windshield.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS

For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration NHTSA, in addition to notifying MINI of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or MINI of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safe-rcar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safe-rcar.gov

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may call the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety.

WATCH ME.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

AT A GLANCE

CONTROLS

DRIVING TIPS

MOBILITY

REFERENCE

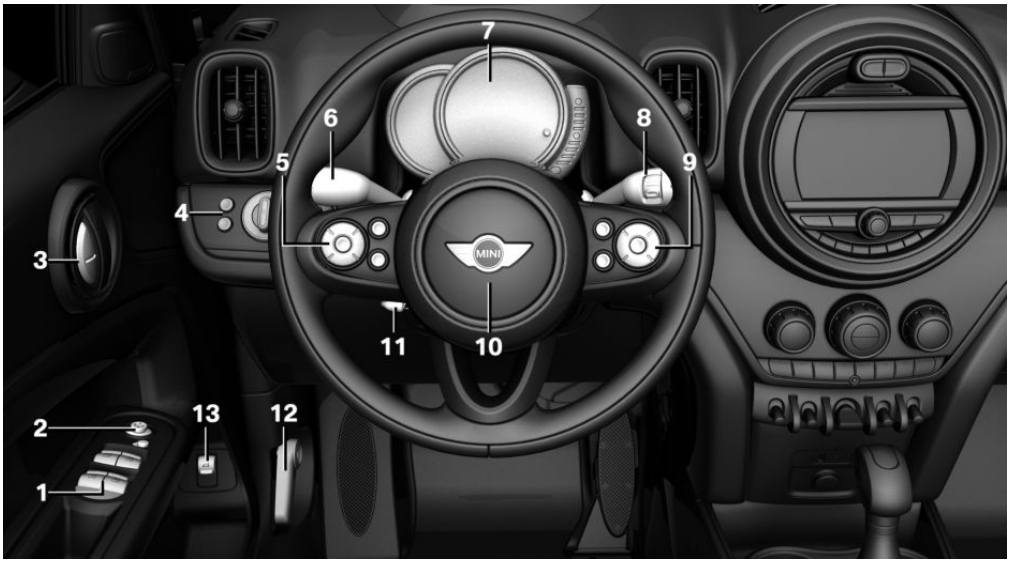
Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

COCKPIT

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

IN THE VICINITY OF THE STEERING WHEEL



1 Power windows 67

2 Exterior mirror operation 79

3 Buttons of the central locking system 55

4 Lights

Front fog lights 131

Light switch 128

Lights off

Daytime running lights 130

Parking lights 128

Low beams 128

Automatic headlight control 129

Cornering light 130

High-beam Assistant 130

Instrument lighting 131

5 Steering wheel buttons, left

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

Camera-based cruise control on/off 158

Cruise control on/off 164

SET Cruise control: store speed

RES CNCL Pausing, continuing cruise control

Cruise control: increase speed

Cruise control: reduce speed

Camera-based cruise control: reduce distance

Camera-based cruise control: increase distance

6 Steering column stalk, left

R L Turn signal 94

High beams, headlight flasher 94

High-beam Assistant 130

Canada: roadside parking light 129

BC Onboard Computer 118

7 Instrument cluster 109

8 Steering column stalk, right

Windshield wipers 98

Rain sensor 99

Cleaning windows 97

REAR Rear window wiper 97

Clean the rear window 97

9 Steering wheel buttons, right

Voice activation 29

Telephone

OK Confirm the selection 118

Move selection up 118

Move selection down 118

Increase volume

Reduce volume

10 Horn, entire surface

11 Adjust the steering wheel 81

12 Unlock hood 241

13 Operate the tailgate 58

IN THE VICINITY OF THE CENTER CONSOLE

1 Hazard warning system 261

Intelligent Safety 144

2 Control Display 20

3 Radio/Multimedia

4 Glove compartment 191

5 Climate control 176

6 PDC Park Distance Control 166

Rearview camera 169

Parking assistant 172

Auto Start/Stop function 90

Start/stop the engine and switch the ignition on/off 88

DSC Dynamic Stability Control 153

MINI Driving Modes switch 155

7 Steptronic transmission selector lever 103

Manual transmission selector lever 102

8 Controller with buttons 21

9 Parking brake 93

IN THE VICINITY OF THE ROOFLINER

1	SOS	Emergency Request	4		Ambient light 132
2	PASS AIR BAG OFF	Indicator light, front-seat passenger airbag 137	5		Panoramic glass sunroof 68
3		Reading lights 132	6		Interior lights 132

CENTRAL INFORMATION DISPLAY (CID)

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

CONCEPT

The Central Information Display (CID) combines the functions of a multitude of switches. These functions can be operated via the Controller or touchscreen.

SAFETY INFORMATION

WARNING

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. If necessary, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.◀

CONTROL ELEMENTS

Overview

1 Control Display with touchscreen

2 Controller with buttons and, depending on the equipment version, with touchpad

Control Display

General information

To clean the Control Display, follow the care instructions, refer to page 270.

In the case of very high temperatures on the Control Display, for instance due to intense solar radiation, the brightness may be reduced down to complete deactivation. Once the temperature is reduced, for instance through shade or air conditioning, the normal functions are restored.

Safety information

NOTE

Objects in the area in the front of the Control Display can shift and damage the Control Display. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not place objects in the area in front of the Control Display.◀

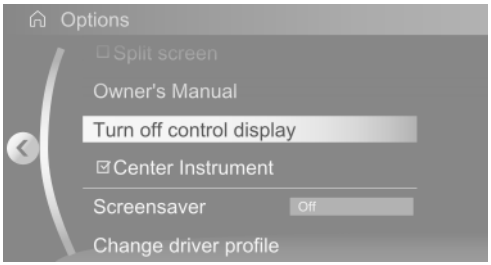
Switching on

1. Switch on the ignition.

2. Press the Controller.

Switching off

1. OPTION Press button.
2. "Turn off control display"



Controller with navigation system

General information

The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The Controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings.

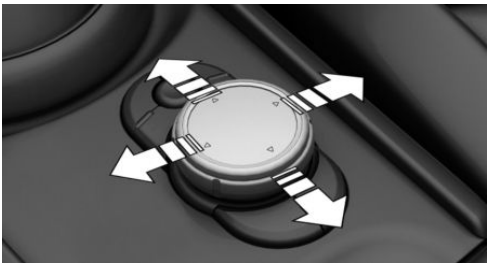
Some functions of the Central Information Display (CID) can be operated using the touchpad on the Controller, refer to page 26:

Operation

▷ Turn.

▷ Press.

▷ Move in four directions.



Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
MENU	Press once: call up main menu.
MENU	Press twice: open recently used menus.
COM	Open the Communication menu.
MEDIA	Open the Media/Radio menu.
NAV	Open destination input menu for navigation.
MAP	Open navigation map.
BACK	Open the previous display.
OPTION	Open the Options menu.

Controller without navigation system

General information

The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The Controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings.

Some functions of the Central Information Display (CID) can be operated using the touchpad on the Controller, refer to page 26:

Operation

▷ Turn.

▷ Press.

▷ Move in two directions.

Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
MENU	Press once: call up main menu. Press twice: open recently used menus.
COM	Open the Communication menu.
MEDIA	Open the Media/Radio menu.
BACK	Open the previous display.
OPTION	Open the Options menu.

OPERATING WITH THE CONTROLLER

Opening the main menu

MENU Press button.

The main menu is displayed.

All Central Information Display (CID) functions can be called up via the main menu.

Selecting menu items

Highlighted menu items can be selected.

1. Turn the Controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.

2. Press the Controller.

Menu items in the Owner's Manual

In the Owner's Manual, menu items that can be selected are set in quotation marks, for instance "System settings".

Changing between displays

After a menu item is selected, for instance "System settings", a new display appears.

▷ Move the Controller to the left.

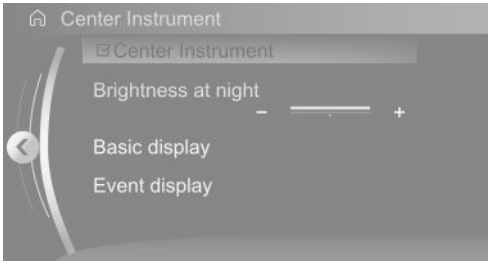
Closes the current display and shows the previous display.

▷ BACK Press button.

The previous display opens.

▷ Move the Controller to the right.

New display is opened.



The arrow indicates that additional displays can be opened.

Opening recently used menus

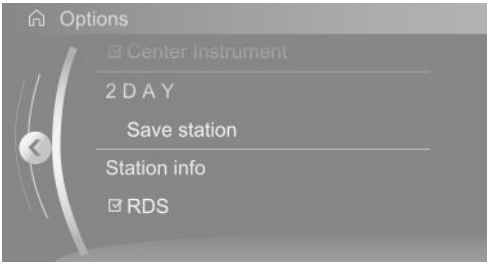
The recently used menus can be displayed.

MENU Press button twice.

Opening the Options menu

OPTION Press button.

The "Options" menu is displayed.



The Options menu consists of various areas:

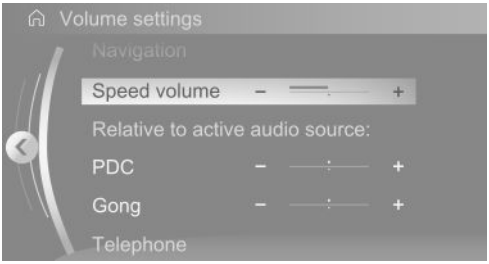
▷ Screen settings, for instance "Split screen".

▷ Control options for the selected main menu, for instance for "Media/Radio".

▷ If applicable, further operating options for the selected menu, for instance "Save station".

Changing settings

1. Select a field.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is displayed.



3. Press the Controller.

Activating/deactivating the functions

Several menu items are preceded by a check-box. It indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.

☑ Function is activated.

☐ Function is deactivated.

Entering letters and numbers

General information

Letters and numbers can be entered via the Controller.

The keyboard's display changes automatically.

Input

1. Turn the Controller: select letters or numbers.
2. OK : confirm entry.

Symbol	Function
I←	Press the Controller: delete letters or number.
I← or ABC	Hold the Controller down: delete all letters or numbers.

Switching between upper/lower case, numbers and characters

Depending on the menu, you can switch between entering upper and lower case letters and numbers:

Symbol	Function
ABC	Enter the letters.
1@+	Enter the numbers.
abc or ABC	Change between capital and lower-case letters.

Without navigation system

@A Aa a@ Select the symbol.

Entry comparison

When entering names and addresses, the choice is narrowed down with every letter entered and letters may be added automatically.

Entries are continuously compared with data stored in the vehicle.

- ▷ Only those letters are offered during entry for which data is available.
- ▷ Destination search: place names can be entered in all languages that are available on the Control Display.

Using alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which there is an entry are displayed at the left edge.

1. Turn the Controller to the left or right quickly.

   All letters for which there are entries are displayed on the left edge.
2. Select the first letter of the desired entry.

   The first entry of the selected letter is displayed.

OPERATING VIA TOUCH-SCREEN

General information

The Control Display is equipped with a touch-screen.

Touch screen with your fingers. Do not use any objects.

Opening the main menu

⌂ Tap on symbol.

All Central Information Display (CID) functions can be called up via the main menu.

Selecting menu items

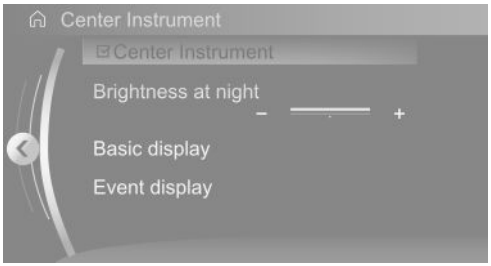
Tap desired menu item.

Menu items in the Owner's Manual

In the Owner's Manual, menu items that can be selected are set in quotation marks, for instance "System settings".

Changing between displays

After a menu item is selected, a new display opens.



The arrow indicates that additional displays can be opened.

▷ Swipe to the left.

▷ Tap on symbol.

New display is opened.

Opening recently used menus

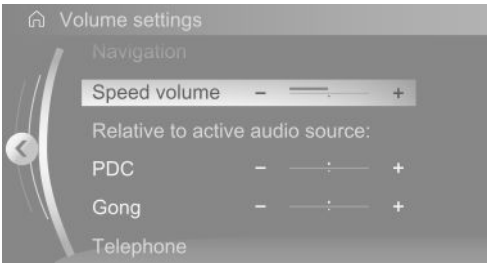
1. Tap on symbol.
2. Tap on symbol.

Changing settings

Settings such as volumes can be changed via the touchscreen.

▷ Slide in the selected field to the right or left, until the desired setting is displayed.

▷ – , + Tap on symbol.



Activating/deactivating the functions

Several menu items are preceded by a check-box. It indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.

☑ Function is activated.

☐ Function is deactivated.

Entering letters and numbers

General information

Letters and numbers can be entered using the Controller or the touchscreen.

The keyboard's display changes automatically.

Symbol	Function
I←	Tapping the symbol: delete the letter or number.
I←	Tapping and holding the symbol for an extended period: delete all letters or numbers.

Switching between upper/lower case, numbers and characters

Symbol	Function
ABC	Enter the letters.
1@+	Enter the numbers.
ABC or abc	Change between capital and lower-case letters.

Operating navigation map

The navigation map can be moved with the touchscreen.

Function	Operation
Enlarge/shrink map.	Drag in or out with the fingers.

TOUCHPAD

General information

Some functions of the Central Information Display (CID) can be operated using the touchpad on the Controller:

Selecting functions

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Touchpad"
4. Select the desired function.
   - ▷ "Speller": enter letters and numbers.
   - ▷ "Map": using the map.
   - ▷ "Search fields": write letters without selecting the list field.
   - ▷ "Audio feedback": pronounces entered letters and numbers.

Entering letters and numbers

Entering letters requires some practice at the beginning. When entering, pay attention to the following:

- ▷ The system distinguishes between upper and lower-case letters and numbers. To make entries, it may be necessary to change between upper and lower-case letters, numbers and characters, refer to page 24.
- ▷ Enter characters as they are displayed on the Control Display.
- ▷ Always enter associated characters, such as accents or periods so that the letter can be clearly recognized. The set language determines what input is possible. Where necessary, enter special characters via the Controller.
- ▷ To delete a character, swipe to the left on the touchpad.
- ▷ To enter a blank space, swipe to the right in the center of the touchpad.
- ▷ To enter a hyphen, swipe to the right in the upper area of the touchpad.
- ▷ To enter an underscore, swipe to the right in the lower area of the touchpad.

Using the map

The map in the navigation system can be moved via the touchpad.

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Enlarge/shrink map.	Drag in or out on the touchpad with fingers.
Display menu.	Tap once.

SPLIT SCREEN

General information

Additional information can be displayed on the right side of the split screen, for instance information from the Onboard Computer.

In the divided screen view, the so-called split screen, this information remains visible even when switching to another menu.

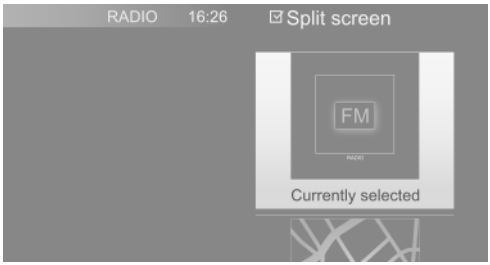
Switching the split screen on/off

1. OPTION Press button.
2. "Split screen"

Selecting the display

The display can be selected in menus, where the split screen is supported.

1. Move the Controller to the right until the split screen is selected.
2. Press the Controller.



3. Select the desired setting.

Specifying the number of displays

It is possible to specify the number of displays.

1. Move the Controller to the right until the split screen is selected.
2. Press the Controller.
3. "Personalize menu"
4. Select the desired setting.
5. Move the Controller to the left.

STATUS INFORMATION

General information

The status field can be found in the upper area of the Control Display. Status information is displayed in the form of symbols.

Status field symbols

Radio

Symbol	Meaning
HD	HD Radio station is being received.
SXM	Satellite radio is switched on.

Telephone

Symbol	Meaning
	Incoming or outgoing call.
	Missed call.
	Signal strength of cellular network. Symbol flashes: network search.
	Cellular network is not available.
	Roaming is active.
	SMS text message received.
	Message received.
	Reminder.
	Sending not possible.
	Contacts are loaded.

Entertainment

Symbol	Meaning
	Music collection.
	AUX-IN port.
	Bluetooth audio.

Symbol	Meaning
	USB audio interface.
	Mobile phone audio interface.
	iPod.

Additional symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Check Control message.
	The sound output has been switched off.
	Encrypted connection not active.
	Request for the current vehicle position.

PROGRAMMABLE MEMORY BUTTONS

General information

The Central Information Display (CID) functions can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly, for instance radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and menu entries.

Settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

Storing a function

1. Select the function via the Central Information Display (CID).
2. 1...6 Press and hold the desired button, until a signal sounds.

Running a function

1...6 Press button.

The function will work immediately. This means, for instance that the number is dialed when a phone number is selected.

Displaying the key assignment

Touch buttons with finger. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

The button assignment is displayed at the top edge of screen.

Deleting the button assignments

1. Press buttons 1 and 6 simultaneously for approx. 5 seconds.
2. "OK"

VOICE ACTIVATION SYSTEM

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

CONCEPT

Most functions displayed on the Control Display can be operated by voice commands via the voice activation system. The system supports you with announcements during input.

GENERAL INFORMATION

- ▷ Functions that can only be used when the vehicle is stationary can only be operated via the voice activation system to a limited extent.
- ▷ The system uses a special microphone on the driver's side.
- ▷ ›...‹ in the Owner's Manual denotes verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.
- ▷ Say the commands, numbers, and letters smoothly and with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.
- ▷ Always say commands in the language of the voice activation system.

FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS

Via the Control Display, set a language that is also supported by the voice activation system so that the spoken commands can be identified.

To set the language, refer to page 32.

USING THE VOICE ACTIVATION SYSTEM

Activating the voice activation system

1. Press button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the signal.
3. Say the command.

This symbol in the instrument cluster indicates that the voice activation system is active.

If no other commands are available, operate the function via the Central Information Display (CID).

Terminating the voice activation system

Press the button on the steering wheel or ›Cancel‹.

POSSIBLE COMMANDS

General information

Most menu items on the Control Display can be voiced as commands.

Commands from other menus can also be spoken.

You may select list entries such as phone list entries via voice activation. Read these list en-

tries out loud exactly as they are shown in the respective list.

Displaying possible commands

The following is displayed in the top area of the Control Display:

- ▷ Some possible commands for the current menu.
- ▷ Some possible commands from other menus.
- ▷ Status of the voice recognition.
- ▷ Encrypted connection is not available.

Help on the voice activation system

- ▷ To have information on the operating principle of the voice activation system read out loud: ›General information on voice control‹.
- ▷ To have help for the current menu read out loud: ›Help‹.

EXAMPLE: OPENING THE TONE SETTINGS

The commands of the menu items are spoken just as they are selected via the Controller.

1. Switch on the Entertainment sound output, if needed.
2. Press button on the steering wheel.
3. ›Media and radio‹
4. ›Tone‹

SETTINGS

Setting the voice dialog

You can set the system to use standard dialog or a short version.

The short version of the voice dialog plays back short messages in abbreviated form.

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Language"
4. "Speech mode:"
5. Select the desired setting.

Selecting the input language

For some languages, the input language can be selected.

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Language"
4. "Voice control:"
5. Select the desired setting.

Activating voice recognition via the server

The voice recognition feature via the server provides a dictation function and a natural method of entering destinations while improving the quality of voice recognition. To use the functions, data is transmitted to a service provider via an encrypted connection and stored locally there.

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Language"
4. "Server speech recognition"

Speaking during voice output

It is possible to answer during inquiries of the voice activation system. The function can be deactivated if inquiries are often undesirably interrupted, for instance due to background noise or talking.

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"

3. "Language"
4. "Speaking during voice output"

ADJUSTING THE VOLUME

Turn the volume button during the spoken instructions until the desired volume is set.

- ▷ The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.
- ▷ The volume is stored for the profile currently used.

INFORMATION ON EMERGENCY REQUESTS

Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a phone connection.

ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

- ▷ Keep the doors, windows, and glass sunroof closed to prevent noise interference.
- ▷ Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.

GENERAL SETTINGS

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

LANGUAGE

Setting the language

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Language"
4. "Language:"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the voice dialog

Voice dialog for the voice activation system, refer to page 30.

TIME

Setting the time zone

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Date and time"
4. "Time zone:"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the time

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Date and time"
4. "Time:"
5. Turn the Controller until the desired hours are displayed.
6. Press the Controller.
7. Turn the Controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
8. Press the Controller.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the time format

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Date and time"
4. "Time format:"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

DATE

Setting the date

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Date and time"
4. "Date:"
5. Turn the Controller until the desired day is displayed.
6. Press the Controller.
7. Make the settings for the month and year.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the date format

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Date and time"
4. "Date format:"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

SETTING THE UNITS OF MEASUREMENT

You can set the units of measurement for some values, for example, fuel consumption, distances and temperature.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Units"
4. Select the desired menu item.
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

ACTIVATING/DEACTIVATING POPUP WINDOWS

For some functions, popup windows are displayed automatically on the Control Display. Some of these popup windows can be activated or deactivated.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Pop-ups"
4. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

CONTROL DISPLAY

Brightness

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Brightness at night"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is set.
7. Press the Controller.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Depending on the light conditions, the brightness settings may not be clearly visible.

Screensaver

If no entries are made via the Central Information Display (CID), a screensaver can be displayed after an adjustable time.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Screensaver"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

MESSAGES

Concept

The menu centrally displays all messages arriving in the vehicle in list form.

General information

The following messages can be displayed:

- ▷ Traffic messages.
- ▷ Check Control messages.
- ▷ Communication messages, for example e-mails, SMS text messages or reminders.
- ▷ Service requirements messages.

Messages are additionally displayed in the status field.

Retrieving messages

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "Notifications"
2. Select the desired message.

The respective menu is opened, where the message is displayed.

Deleting messages

All messages, except Check Control messages, can be deleted from the list. Check Control messages are displayed as long as they are relevant.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "Notifications"
2. Select the desired message.
3. OPTION Press button.
4. "Delete this notification" or "Delete all notifications"

Settings

The following settings can be adjusted:

- ▷ Select the applications, from which messages will be permitted.
- ▷ Sort the messages according to date or priority.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Notifications"
4. Select the desired setting.

DATA PROTECTION

Data transfer

Concept

The vehicle offers various functions which require data to be transferred to MINI or a service provider. The data transfer can be deactivated for some functions.

General information

With data transfer deactivated, the respective function cannot be used.

Only make these settings while stationary.

Activating/deactivating the data transfer

Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. "My MINI"
3. "System settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting.

Deleting personal data in the vehicle

Concept

Depending on the usage, the vehicle stores personal data, such as stored radio stations. This personal data can be permanently deleted via the Central Information Display (CID).

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following data is deleted:

- ▷ Driver profile settings.
- ▷ Stored radio stations.
- ▷ Stored programmable memory buttons.
- ▷ Travel and Onboard Computer information.
- ▷ Music collection.
- ▷ Navigation, for instance stored destinations.
- ▷ Phone book.
- ▷ Office data, for instance voice notes.
- ▷ Login accounts.

Altogether, the deletion of the data can take up to 15 minutes.

Functional requirement

Data can only be deleted while stationary.

Deleting data

Heed and follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. "My MINI"
3. "System settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "Delete personal data"
6. "Delete personal data"
7. "OK"
8. Exit and lock the vehicle.

After 15 minutes, the deletion process is completed.

If not all of the data was deleted, repeat the deletion.

Canceling deletion

Start the engine to cancel deletion of the data.

CONNECTIONS

Concept

Various connection types are available for using mobile devices in the vehicle. The connection type to select depends on the mobile device and the desired function.

General information

The following overview shows possible functions and the suitable connection types for them. The scope of functions depends on the mobile device.

Function	Connection type
Making calls via the hands-free system. Using phone functions via the Central Information Display (CID). Using the smartphone Office functions.	Bluetooth.
Playing music from the smartphone or the audio player.	Bluetooth or USB.
Using compatible apps via the Central Information Display (CID).	Bluetooth or USB.
USB storage device: Exporting and importing driver profiles. Performing software updates. Playing music.	USB.
Playing videos from the smartphone or the USB storage device.	USB.
Using Apple CarPlay apps via the Central Information Display (CID) and voice operation.	Bluetooth and WiFi.

The following connection types require one-time pairing with the vehicle:

- ▷ Bluetooth.
- ▷ Apple CarPlay

Paired devices are automatically recognized later on and connected to the vehicle.

Safety information

WARNING

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. If necessary, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.◀

Compatible devices

General information

Information on mobile devices compatible with the vehicle can be found at www.miniusa.com/bluetooth.

Malfunctions may occur with devices not listed or deviating software versions.

Displaying the vehicle identification number and software part number

When looking for compatible devices, you may have to state the vehicle identification number and the software part number. These numbers can be displayed in the vehicle.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth® info"
6. "System information"

A software update, refer to page 41, can be performed, if needed.

Bluetooth connection

Functional requirements

- ▷ Compatible device, refer to page 36, with Bluetooth interface.
- ▷ The remote control is in the vehicle.
- ▷ The device is ready for operation.
- ▷ Bluetooth is activated on the device and in the vehicle, refer to page 37.
- ▷ Bluetooth pre-settings, such as visibility, may be required on the device; refer to the owner's manual of the device.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

Switching on Bluetooth

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth®"

Activating/deactivating telephone functions

To use all supported functions of a mobile phone, the following functions must be activated prior to pairing.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. Select desired setting:
   - ▷ "Office"

     Activate function to transmit short messages, e-mails, calendars, tasks, notes, and reminders to the vehicle. Costs can be incurred by transmitting all data to the vehicle.
   - ▷ "Contact images"

     Activate function to show the contact pictures.
6. Move the Controller to the left.

Pairing the mobile device with the vehicle

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Connect new device"
5. Select the functions for which the device will be used:
   - ▷ "Telephone"
   - ▷ "Bluetooth® audio"
   - ▷ "Apps"
   - ▷ "Apple CarPlay"

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed on the Control Display.
6. Search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity of the mobile device.

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle appears on the mobile device display.

   Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle.
7. Depending on the mobile device, a control number is displayed or the control number must be entered.
   - ▷ Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the device.

     Confirm the control number on the device and on the Control Display.
   - ▷ Enter and confirm the same control number on the device and via the Central Information Display (CID).

   The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

If connection was not successful: Frequently Asked Questions, refer to page 37.

Frequently asked questions

All requirements are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

Why could the mobile phone not be paired or connected?

- ▷ There are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the mobile phone or vehicle.

  In the vehicle, delete Bluetooth connections with other devices.

Delete all known Bluetooth connections from the device list on the mobile phone and start a new device search.

▷ The mobile phone is in power-save mode or has only a limited remaining battery life.

Charge mobile phone.

Why does the mobile phone no longer react?

▷ The applications on the mobile phone do not function anymore.

Switch the mobile phone off and on again.

▷ Possibly too high or too low ambient temperatures for mobile phone operation.

Do not subject the mobile phone to extreme ambient temperatures.

Why can phone functions not be used via the Central Information Display (CID)?

▷ The mobile phone may not be properly configured, for instance as Bluetooth audio device.

Connect the mobile phone with the telephone or additional phone function.

Why are no or not all phone book entries displayed or why are they incomplete?

▷ Transmission of the phone book entries is not yet complete.

▷ It is possible that only the phone book entries of the mobile phone or the SIM card are transmitted.

▷ It may not be possible to display phone book entries with special characters.

▷ It may not be possible to transmit contacts from social networks.

▷ The number of phone book entries to be stored is too high.

▷ Data volume of the contact too large, for instance due to stored information such as notes.

Reduce the data volume of the contact.

▷ A mobile phone can only be connected as audio source or as telephone.

Configure the mobile phone and connect it with the telephone or additional phone function.

How can the phone connection quality be improved?

▷ The strength of the Bluetooth signal on the mobile phone can be adjusted, depending on the mobile phone.

▷ Insert mobile phone into the wireless charging tray.

▷ Adjust the volume of the microphone and loudspeakers separately.

If all points in this list have been checked and the required function is still not available, contact the hotline, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

USB connection

General information

Mobile devices with a USB port are connected to the USB interface.

▷ Mobile phones.

▷ Audio devices with USB port, for instance MP3 player.

▷ USB storage devices.

Common file systems are supported. FAT32 and exFAT are the recommended formats.

The following applications are possible:

▷ Exporting and importing driver profiles, refer to page 61.

▷ Playing music files via USB audio.

▷ Playing videos via USB video.

▷ Loading of software updates, refer to page 41.

Follow the following when connecting:

▷ Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB interface.

▷ Use a flexible adapter cable.

▷ Protect the USB storage device against mechanical damage.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

- Due to the large number of USB media available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every device is operable on the vehicle.
- Do not expose USB media to extreme environmental conditions, such as very high temperatures; refer to the owner's manual of the device.
- Due to the many different compression techniques, proper playback of the media stored on the USB storage device cannot be guaranteed in all cases.
- A connected USB storage device will be supplied with charging current via the USB interface if the device supports this.
- To ensure proper transmission of the stored data, do not charge a USB storage device via the onboard socket, when it is connected to the USB interface.
- Depending on how the USB storage device is being used, settings may be required on the USB storage device, refer to the owner's manual of the device.

Not compatible USB media:

- USB hard drives.
- USB hubs.
- USB memory card readers with multiple inserts.
- HFS-formatted USB media.
- Devices such as fans or lamps.

Functional requirement

Compatible device, refer to page 36, with USB interface.

Connecting the device

Connect the USB storage device using a suitable adapter cable to a USB interface, refer to page 189.

The USB storage device is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Apple CarPlay preparation

Concept

CarPlay allows certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone to be used via Siri voice operation and the Central Information Display (CID).

Functional requirements

- Compatible iPhone, refer to page 36.

  iPhone 5 or later with iOS 7.1 or later.
- Corresponding mobile wireless contract.
- Bluetooth, WiFi, and Siri voice operation are switched on on the iPhone.

Switching on Bluetooth and CarPlay

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. Select the following settings:
   - "Bluetooth®"
   - "Apple CarPlay"

Pairing iPhone with CarPlay

Pairing an iPhone with the vehicle, refer to page 37, via Bluetooth

Select CarPlay as the function:

"Apple CarPlay"

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list, refer to page 40.

Operation

For more information, see the Integrated Owner's Manual, Online Owner's Manual, MINI Driver's Guide app or the Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication.

Frequently asked questions

All requirements are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite

that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

The iPhone has already been paired with Apple CarPlay. When a new connection is established, CarPlay can no longer be selected.

- ▷ Delete the iPhone concerned from the device list.
- ▷ On the iPhone, delete the vehicle concerned from the list of stored vehicles under Bluetooth and under WiFi.
- ▷ Pair the iPhone as a new device.

If the steps listed have been carried out and the required function is still not available: contact the hotline, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Managing mobile devices

General information

- ▷ After one-time pairing, the devices are automatically recognized and reconnected when the ignition is switched on.
- ▷ The data stored on the SIM card or in the mobile phone are transferred to the vehicle after recognition.
- ▷ For some devices, certain settings may be necessary, for instance authorization, see owner's manual of the device.

Displaying the device list

All devices paired and/or connected with the vehicle are displayed in the device list.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Mobile devices"

A symbol indicates, for which function a device is used.

Symbol	Function
	"Telephone"
	"Additional telephone"
	"Bluetooth® audio"
	"Apps"
	"Apple CarPlay"

Configuring the device

Functions can be activated or deactivated for paired and connected devices.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. Select the desired device.
5. Select the desired setting.

If a function is assigned to a device, the function will be deactivated where appropriate for a device that is already connected and the device will be disconnected.

Disconnecting the device

The connection of the device to the vehicle is disconnected.

The device remains paired and can be connected again, refer to page 40.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. Select device.
5. "Disconnect device"

Connecting the device

A disconnected device can be reconnected.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. Select device.
5. "Connect device"

The functions that were assigned to the device before disconnecting are assigned to the device when it is reconnected. If the device is already connected, these functions are deactivated.

Deleting the device

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. Select device.
5. "Delete device"

The device is disconnected and removed from the device list.

Swapping the telephone and additional phone

If two mobile phones are connected to the vehicle, the functions of the phone and additional phone can be switched.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. "Swap telephone/additional tel."

Software update

General information

The vehicle supports a large number of mobile devices, for instance mobile phones and MP3 players. Software updates are available for many of the supported devices. The vehicle is maintained up-to-date via regular vehicle software updates.

Updates and related current information is available on the Internet at www.mini.com/update.

Displaying the installed software version

The software version installed in the vehicle is displayed.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Software update"
4. "Show current version"

If an update has been carried out before, select the desired version to display additional information.

Updating software via USB

The software may only be updated when the vehicle is stationary.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. Store the file for the software update in the main directory of a USB flash drive.
2. Connect the USB data storage to a USB interface.
3. "My MINI"
4. "System settings"
5. "Software update"
6. "Update software"
7. "USB"
8. "Install software"
9. "OK"
10. Wait for the update to complete.
11. Confirm system restart.

Restoring the software version

The software version before the last software update and the version before the first software update can be restored.

The software may only be restored when the vehicle is stationary.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Software update"
4. "Restore software"
5. ▷ "Previous version"

   The previous software version is restored.

   ▷ "Default software settings"

   The first software version is restored.
6. "Remove software"
7. "OK"
8. Wait for restore.
9. Confirm system restart.

OWNER'S MANUAL MEDIA

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

GENERAL INFORMATION

You can use various media formats to call up the content in the Owner's Manual. The following Owner's Manual media formats are available:

- ▷ Printed Owner's Manual, refer to page 43.
- ▷ Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle, refer to page 43.
- ▷ MINI Motorer's Guide App, refer to page 44.
- ▷ Online Owner's Manual, refer to page 45.

There are different features, refer to page 46, in each of the different media formats.

PRINTED OWNER'S MANUAL

Concept

The printed Owner's Manual describes all standard, country-specific, and optional features offered with the series.

General information

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be obtained as printed book from the service center.

Supplementary Owner's Manuals

Also follow the instructions of the Supplementary Owner's Manuals, which are included in addition to the onboard literature.

INTEGRATED OWNER'S MANUAL IN THE VEHICLE

Concept

The Integrated Owner's Manual specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle. The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display.

Selecting the Owner's Manual

1. MENU Press button.
2. "My MINI"
3. "Owner's Manual"
4. Select the required method of accessing the contents.

Scrolling through the owner's manual

Turn the Controller, until the next or previous contents are displayed.

Context help

General information

The section of the Owner's Manual relating to the function that is currently selected can be displayed directly.

Opening via Central Information Display (CID)

Change directly to the Options menu from the function on the Control Display:

1. OPTION Press button.
2. "Owner's Manual"

Opening when a Check Control message is displayed

Directly from the Check Control message on the Control Display:

"Owner's Manual"

Changing between a function and the Owner's Manual

To switch from a function, for instance radio, to the Owner's Manual on the Control Display and to alternate between the two displays:

1. OPTION Press button.
2. "Owner's Manual"
3. Select the desired page in the Owner's Manual.
4. OPTION Press button again to return to last displayed function.
5. BACK Press button to return to the page of the Owner's Manual displayed last.

To alternate continuously between the last displayed function and the last displayed page of the Owner's Manual, repeat steps 4 & 5. Opens a new display every time.

Programmable memory buttons

General information

The Owner's Manual can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly.

Storing

1. Select the desired entry point via the Central Information Display (CID):
   - ▷ "Quick reference"
   - ▷ "Search by pictures"
   - ▷ "Keyword search"
   - ▷ "Animations"
2. 1...6 Press and hold the desired button, until a signal sounds.

Executing

1...6 Press button.

The Owner's Manual is displayed immediately.

MINI MOTORER'S GUIDE APP

Concept

The app specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle.

The app can be displayed on smartphones and tablets.

General information

The Owner's Manual is available in many countries as an app for iOS or Android in the respective Store.

Entering the vehicle identification number filters the contents.

Vehicles

It is possible to store Owner's Manuals for various vehicles in the app.

It is also possible to test the app using a demonstration vehicle.

Operating systems and language

The app is available for the iOS and Android operating systems.

The Owner's Manual is downloaded in the language of the device.

ONLINE OWNER'S MANUAL

Concept

The Online Owner's Manual specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle.

The Online Owner's Manual can be displayed in any of today's browsers.

General information

The Online Owner's Manual is available in many countries. An account on the customer portal may be required.

Entering the vehicle identification number filters the contents.

Vehicles

It is possible to store several individual Owner's Manuals for various vehicles.

Language

The language is based on whichever language is set in the operating system.

Printing

You can use the print function for automatically formatting and printing out individual chapters.

MEDIA COMPONENTS

General information

The following components are not available to the same extent in all media formats.

Additional information on availability, refer to page 46.

Quick Reference Guide

The Quick Reference Guide provides information on how to operate the vehicle, how to use basic vehicle functions and what to do in case of a breakdown.

Search by illustrations

Based on illustrations, image search provides information and descriptions. This is helpful when the terminology for a feature is not at hand.

Frequently asked questions

This chapter provides answers to frequently asked questions about your vehicle and helpful links to additional information.

Quick links

The chapter on quick links explains the most important information and operating instructions on the basis of various situations.

Videos

The videos explain the main functions of the systems.

Smart Scan

You can use Smart Scan to scan various symbols in the vehicle. After a brief explanation of the symbol in question appears, it is then possible to display the chapter directly.

Smart Scan is only available for the iOS operating system.

Keyword search

You can use keywords to search for information and descriptions in the media.

KEY FEATURES

	Printed	Integrated	APP	Online
All equipment included.	X	—	—	—
Equipment included in vehicle.	—	X	X	X
Quick Reference Guide.	—	X	X	X
Search by illustrations.	—	X	X	X
Frequently asked questions.	—	—	X	X
Quick links.	—	—	X	X
Videos.	—	X	X	X
Smart Scan.	—	—	X	—
Keyword search.	X	X	X	X

X: included.
—: not included.

HANDLE ME.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

AT A GLANCE

CONTROLS

DRIVING TIPS

MOBILITY

REFERENCE

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

OPENING AND CLOSING

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

REMOTE CONTROL

General information

The vehicle is supplied with two remote controls with integrated key.

Each remote control contains a replaceable battery. Replacing the battery, refer to page 52.

You may set the key functions depending on the optional features and country-specific version. Settings, refer to page 64.

The vehicle stores personal settings for every remote control. Driver profile, refer to page 61.

The remote controls hold information about required maintenance. Service data in the remote control, refer to page 249.

Safety information

WARNING

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the remote control with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.◂

WARNING

Unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.◂

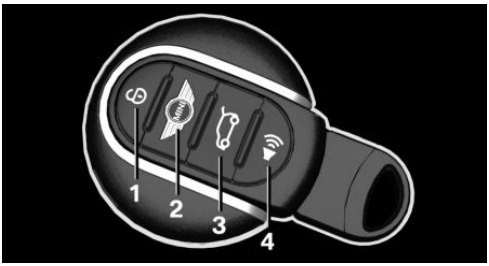
WARNING

Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.◂

Overview



1 Unlocking
2 Locking
3 Unlocking the tailgate

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

With automatic tailgate operation: open the tailgate

4 Panic mode

Unlocking

Press button on the remote control.

Depending on the settings, refer to page 64, the following access points are unlocked.

▷ Driver's door and fuel filler flap.

Press the button of the remote control again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

▷ All doors, tailgate, and fuel filler flap.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

▷ The settings stored in the driver profile, refer to page 61, are applied.

▷ The driver's seat is set to the last position saved in the driver's profile. This function must be activated in the settings, refer to page 64.

▷ The interior lights, courtesy lights and the MINI logo projection are switched on.

These functions are not available if the interior lights were switched off manually.

▷ The welcome lights are switched on, if this function was activated.

▷ Exterior mirrors folded through convenient closing are folded open.

▷ The alarm system, refer to page 65, is switched off.

The light functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Convenient opening

Press and hold this button on the remote control after unlocking.

The windows and the glass sunroof are opened, as long as the button on the remote control is pressed.

Locking

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press button on the remote control.

   All doors, the tailgate, and the fuel filler flap are locked.

   The alarm system, refer to page 65, is switched on.
3. Press and hold this button on the remote control in the area close to the vehicle after locking.

   The exterior mirrors are folded in.

If the engine or ignition is still switched on when you lock the vehicle, the vehicle horn honks twice. In this case, the engine or ignition must be switched off by means of the Start/Stop button.

With Comfort Access: convenient closing

Safety information

WARNING

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.◀

Closing

Press and hold this button on the remote control in the area close to the vehicle.

The windows and the glass sunroof are closed, as long as the button on the remote control is pressed.

The exterior mirrors are folded in.

Switch on interior lights and courtesy light

Press button on the remote control with the vehicle locked.

The MINI logo projection is also switched on.

These functions are not available if the interior lights were switched off manually.

The light functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

After locking, wait 10 seconds before pressing the button again.

Tailgate

General information

To avoid locking it in the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment and the country version, it is possible to specify whether the doors are also unlocked when unlocking with the remote control. Adjusting the settings, refer to page 64.

Safety information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◂

NOTE

The tailgate swings back and up when it opens. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◂

NOTE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the rear window and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of damage to property. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the rear window.◂

Opening

Press and hold button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

Without automatic tailgate operation:

The tailgate is unlocked and can be swung upward.

With automatic tailgate operation:

The tailgate opens automatically.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

▷ Press button on the remote control and hold for at least 3 seconds.

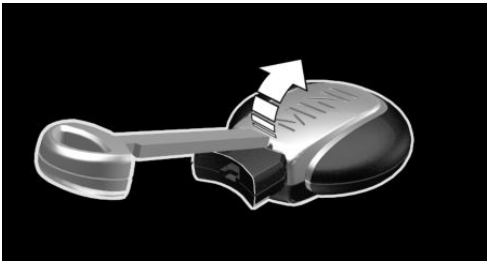
▷ Briefly press the button on the remote control three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

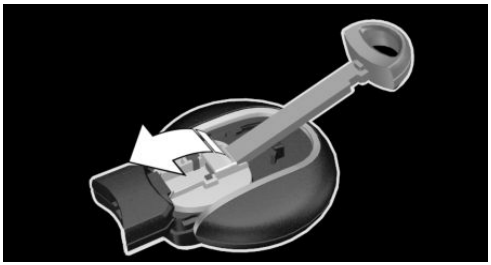
Replacing the battery

1. Remove the integrated key from the remote control, refer to page 54.
2. Slide the integrated key into the opening and raise the cover.

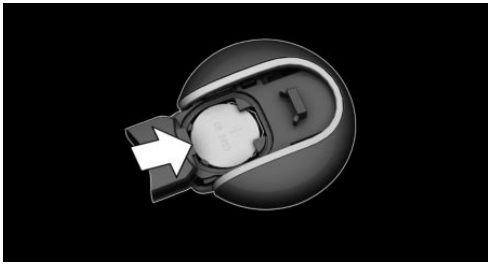
   The battery compartment is accessible.



3. Slide the integrated key in the cover of the battery compartment and raise the cover.



4. Push battery in the direction of the arrow using a pointed object and lift it out.



5. Insert a type CR 2032 battery with the positive side facing up.
6. Insert lid and cover.
7. Push the integrated key into the remote control until it engages.

Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

Additional remote controls

Additional remote controls are available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Loss of the remote controls

A lost remote control can be blocked and replaced by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Malfunction

General information

A Check Control message is displayed.

Remote control detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- ▷ The battery of the remote control is discharged. Replacing the battery, refer to page 52.
- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- ▷ Shielding of the remote control due to metal objects.

  Do not transport the remote control together with metal objects.
- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the remote control.

  Do not transport the remote control together with electronic devices.
- ▷ Interference of radio transmission by a charging process of mobile devices, for instance charging of a mobile phone.
- ▷ The remote control is in direct proximity of the wireless charging tray.

  Place the remote control down at a different location.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can be unlocked and locked from the outside with the integrated key, refer to page 54.

Starting the engine via emergency detection of the remote control

It is not possible to start the engine if the remote control has not been detected.

It is not possible to switch on the drive-ready state if the remote control has not been detected.

Proceed as follows in this case:

1. Hold the remote control as shown against the marked area on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. If the remote control is detected:

   Start the engine within 10 seconds.

If the remote control is not detected, slightly change the position of the remote control and repeat the procedure.

INTEGRATED KEY

General information

The driver's door can be locked and unlocked without remote control using the integrated key.

Safety information

WARNING

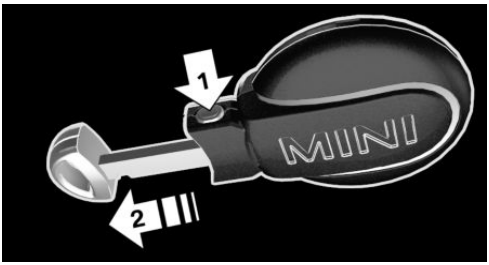
Unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.◂

NOTE

The door lock is permanently joined with the door. The door handle can be moved. When pulling the door handle with the integrated key inserted, paint or the integrated key can be damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Remove the integrated key before pulling the outside door handle.◂

Removing

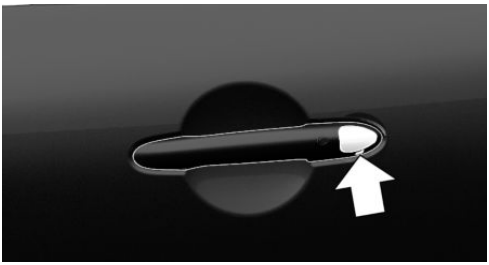


Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the integrated key, arrow 2.

Locking/unlocking via the door lock

1. Remove lid on the door lock.

   To do this, slide the integrated key into the opening from below and remove the lid.



2. Unlock or lock the door lock using the integrated key.

The other doors must be unlocked or locked from the inside.

Alarm system

The alarm system is not switched on if the vehicle is locked with the integrated key.

The alarm system is triggered when the door is opened, if the vehicle has been unlocked via the door lock. In order to stop this alarm, unlock vehicle with the remote control or switch on the ignition, if needed, through emergency detection of the remote control, refer to page 53.

BUTTONS FOR THE CENTRAL LOCKING SYSTEM

General information

In the event of a severe accident, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning system and interior lights come on.

Overview

Buttons for the central locking system.

Locking

Press the button with the front doors closed.

- ▷ The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.
- ▷ The vehicle is not secured against theft when locking.

Unlocking

Press button.

Opening

- ▷ Press button to unlock the doors together, and then pull the door handle above the armrest.
- ▷ Front doors: pull the door handle on the door to open the door. The other doors remain locked.
- ▷ Back doors: pull twice on the door handle on the door to be opened; the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it. The other doors remain locked.

COMFORT ACCESS

Concept

The vehicle can be accessed without activating the remote control.

All you need to do is to have the remote control with you, such as in your pants pocket.

The vehicle automatically detects the remote control when it is in close proximity or in the car's interior.

General information

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

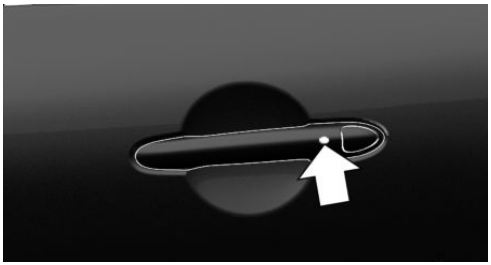
- ▷ Unlocking and locking the vehicle.
- ▷ Convenient closing.
- ▷ Open the tailgate.
- ▷ Opening/closing the tailgate with no-touch activation.

  This function is not available in vehicles with a trailer hitch or with a rear luggage rack preparation.

Functional requirements

- ▷ To lock the vehicle, the remote control must be located outside of the vehicle near the doors.
- ▷ The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.

Unlocking



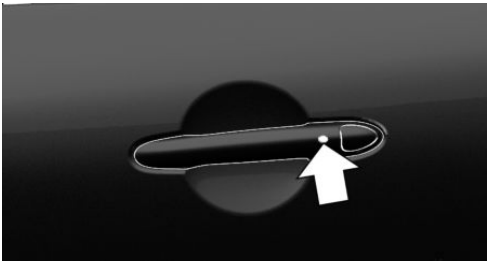
On the driver's or front passenger's outer door handle, press the button.

Depending on the settings, refer to page 64, only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap may be unlocked. Unlike when unlocking with the remote control, pressing the button on the outer door handle again does not unlock the other vehicle access points. Rather, the vehicle is locked again.

If a door of a locked vehicle was opened from the inside via the door opener, pressing the button on the outer door handle first locks the vehicle again. To unlock, the button on the outer door handle must be pressed again.

This is the case whether the vehicle was locked automatically after driving off or via the central locking system button from the inside.

Locking



On the driver's or front passenger's outer door handle, press the button.

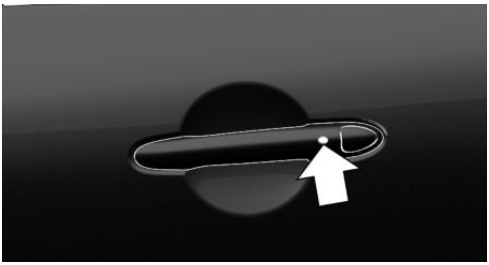
Convenient closing

Safety information

WARNING

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.◂

Closing



Press and hold down the button on the driver's or front passenger's outer door handle.

In addition to locking, the windows and glass sunroof will be closed.

The exterior mirrors are folded in.

Opening the tailgate

General information

If the tailgate is opened via Comfort Access, locked doors are not unlocked.

To avoid locking it in the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

Safety information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◀

NOTE

The tailgate swings back and up when it opens. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◀

NOTE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the rear window and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of damage to property. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the rear window.◀

Opening

Press button next on tailgate.

Without automatic tailgate operation:

The tailgate is unlocked and can be swung upward.

With automatic tailgate operation:

The tailgate opens automatically.

Opening and closing the split doors with no-touch activation

Concept

The tailgate can be opened and closed with no-touch activation using the remote control you are carrying. Two sensors detect a forward-directed foot motion in the center of the area at the rear of the vehicle and the tailgate is opened or closed.

This function is not available in vehicles with a trailer hitch or with a rear luggage rack preparation.

General information

To avoid locking it in the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

If the remote control is in the sensor area, the tailgate can be opened or closed inadvertently by an unconscious or alleged recognized foot movement.

The sensor has an approximate range of 5 ft/1.50 m extending from the rear of the vehicle.

If the tailgate is opened with no-touch activation, locked doors are not unlocked.

Safety information

WARNING

During no-touch activation, vehicle parts may be touched, such as the hot exhaust gas system. There is a risk of injury. When moving your foot, make sure you have a firm stance and do not touch the vehicle.◀

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◀

NOTE

The tailgate swings back and up when it opens. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◀

Performing the foot movement

1. Stand in the middle behind the vehicle at about an arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Wave a foot under the vehicle in the direction of travel and immediately pull it back. With this movement, the leg must pass through the ranges of both sensors.

Opening

Perform the foot movement described earlier.

Before the opening, the hazard warning system flashes.

Moving your foot again will stop the opening motion, and moving it one more time after that will close the tailgate.

Closing

Perform the foot movement described earlier.

Before closing, the hazard warning system flashes and an acoustic signal sounds.

Moving your foot again will stop the closing motion, and moving it one more time after that will re-open the tailgate.

Malfunction

Remote control detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- ▷ The battery of the remote control is discharged. Replacing the battery, refer to page 52.
- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- ▷ Shielding of the remote control due to metal objects.

  Do not transport the remote control together with metal objects.
- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the remote control.

  Do not transport the remote control together with electronic devices.

Wet or snowy conditions may disrupt the locking request recognition function on the door handles.

In the case of a malfunction, unlock and lock the vehicle using the buttons of the remote control or using the integrated key, refer to page 54.

TAILGATE

General information

To avoid locking it in the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment and the country version, it is possible to specify whether the doors are also unlocked when unlocking with the remote control. Adjusting the settings, refer to page 64.

Safety information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◀

NOTE

The tailgate swings back and up when it opens. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◂

NOTE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the rear window and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of damage to property. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the rear window.◂

Without automatic tailgate operation

Opening from the outside

▷ Without Comfort Access: unlock vehicle.

With Comfort Access: unlock the vehicle or have the remote control with you.

Press button next on tailgate.

▷ Press and hold button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

Depending on the setting, the doors may also be unlocked. Unlocking with the remote control, refer to page 52.

The tailgate is unlocked and can be swung upward.

Opening from the inside

With Steptronic transmission:

With the vehicle stationary, press the button in the storage compartment of the driver's door upward.

If the vehicle is locked, selector lever position P must be engaged first.

With manual transmission:

With the vehicle stationary, pull the button in the storage compartment of the driver's door upward twice in quick succession.

Closing

Recessed grips on the interior trim of the tailgate can be used to conveniently pull down the tailgate.

With automatic tailgate operation

Opening

Adjusting the opening height

You can set how far the tailgate should open.

When adjusting the opening height, ensure that there is a clearance of at least 4 in/10 cm above the tailgate.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. "Tailgate"
5. Monitor the tailgate and set the desired opening height.

From the outside

▷ Without Comfort Access: unlock vehicle.

With Comfort Access: unlock the vehicle or have the remote control with you.

Press the button on tailgate's exterior.

▷ Press and hold button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

If the vehicle is stationary, the tailgate opens automatically to the adjusted opening height.

From the inside

With Steptronic transmission:

Pull button in the storage compartment of the driver's door upward.

If the vehicle is locked, selector lever position P must be engaged first.

With manual transmission:

With the vehicle stationary, pull the button in the storage compartment of the driver's door upward twice in quick succession.

If the vehicle is stationary, the tailgate opens automatically to the adjusted opening height.

Interruption of the opening procedure

The opening procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

▷ When the vehicle starts moving.

▷ By pressing the button on the outside of the tailgate. Pressing again closes the tailgate.

▷ By pressing the button on the inside of the tailgate. Pressing again closes the tailgate.

▷ By pressing the button on the remote control. Pressing again closes the tailgate.

▷ By pressing or pulling the button in the storage compartment of the driver's door. Pulling again continues the opening motion.

Closing

From the outside

Press the button on tailgate's exterior.

From the inside

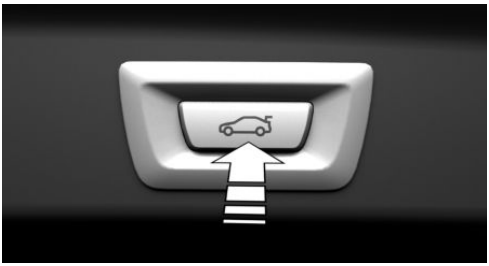
Press and hold the button in the storage compartment of the driver's door.

The remote control must be located in the car's interior for this function.

An acoustic signal sounds before the tailgate is closed.

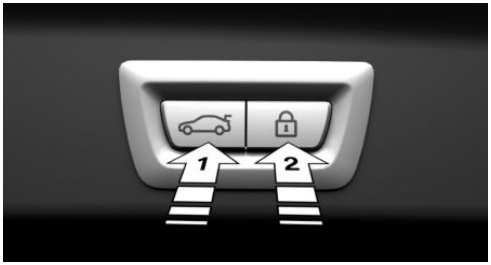
From inside the tailgate

Without Comfort Access:



Press button on the inside of the tailgate.

With Comfort Access:



- ▷ Press button, arrow 1, on the inside of the tailgate.
- ▷ Press button, arrow 2.

  The vehicle will be locked after closing the tailgate. The driver's door must be closed for this purpose and the remote control must be outside of the vehicle in the area of the tailgate.

Interruption of the closing procedure

The closing procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

- ▷ If the vehicle starts off with a jerky movement.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the outside of the tailgate. Pressing again closes the tailgate.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the inside of the tailgate. Pressing again closes the tailgate.
- ▷ By releasing the button in the storage compartment of the driver's door. Pressing again and holding continues the closing motion.

Malfunction

Safety information

WARNING

With manual operation of a blocked tailgate, it can release itself unexpectedly from the blockage. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not operate the tailgate manually if it is blocked. Have it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

Manual operation

Operate the unlocked tailgate manually with a slow and smooth motion.

To close the tailgate fully, press down lightly only. Closing occurs automatically.

DRIVER PROFILE

Concept

In the driver profiles, individual settings for several drivers can be stored and called up again when required.

General information

There are three driver profiles with which personal vehicle settings can be stored. Every remote control has one of these driver profiles assigned.

If the vehicle is unlocked using a remote control, the assigned personal driver profile will be activated. All settings stored in the driver profile are automatically applied.

If several drivers use their own remote control, the vehicle will adjust the personal settings during unlocking. These settings are also restored, if the vehicle has been used in the meantime by a person with a different remote control.

Changes to the settings are automatically stored in the driver profile currently activated.

If another driver profile is selected via the Central Information Display (CID), the settings stored in it will be applied automatically. The new driver profile is assigned to the remote control currently used.

There is an additional guest profile available that is not assigned to any remote control: it can be used to apply settings in the vehicle without changing the personal driver profiles.

Functional requirements

For the system to be able to identify the driver profile associated to a particular driver, the detected remote control must be clearly allocated to the driver.

This is the case when:

- ▷ The driver is only carrying his or her own remote control.
- ▷ The driver unlocks the vehicle.
- ▷ The driver gets into the vehicle through the driver's door.

Settings

The settings for the following systems and functions are stored in the active profile. The scope of storable settings depends on country and equipment.

- ▷ Unlocking and locking.
- ▷ Lights.
- ▷ Radio.
- ▷ Instrument cluster.
- ▷ Programmable memory buttons.
- ▷ Volumes, tone.
- ▷ Control Display.
- ▷ Climate control.
- ▷ Navigation.
- ▷ PDC Park Distance Control.
- ▷ Rearview camera.
- ▷ Head-up Display.
- ▷ MINI Driving Modes.
- ▷ Intelligent Safety.
- ▷ Driver's seat position, exterior mirror position.

  Both the positions saved via the seat memory and the last position set are saved.

Profile management

Selecting a driver profile

Regardless of the remote control in use, a different driver profile may be activated. This allows you to call up personal vehicle settings, even if you did not unlock the vehicle with your own remote control.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select driver profile.
4. "OK"

- ▷ All settings stored in the called-up driver profile are automatically applied.
- ▷ The called-up driver profile is assigned to the remote control being used at the time.
- ▷ If the driver profile is already assigned to a different remote control, this driver profile will apply to both remote controls.

Using a guest profile

The guest profile is for individual settings that are stored in none of the three personal driver profiles.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. "Drive off (guest)"
4. "OK"

The guest profile cannot be renamed. It is not assigned to the current remote control.

Renaming a driver profile

A personal name can be assigned to the active driver profile to avoid confusion between the driver profiles.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Driver profiles"

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

3. Select driver profile.

   The driver profile marked with this symbol can be renamed.
4. "Change driver profile name"
5. Enter profile name.
6. OK Select the symbol.

Resetting a driver profile

The settings of the driver profile currently in use are reset to their factory settings.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select driver profile.

   The driver profile marked with this symbol can be reset.
4. "Reset driver profile"
5. "OK"

Exporting driver profiles

Most settings of the active driver profile can be exported.

Exporting is helpful when storing and retrieving personal settings, for instance before delivering the vehicle to a workshop. The stored driver profiles can be taken into another vehicle.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select driver profile.

   The driver profile marked with this symbol can be exported.
4. "Export driver profile (USB)"

   Select USB storage device as needed.

Importing driver profiles

Profiles stored on a USB storage device can be imported via the USB interface.

The existing settings of the active driver profile are overwritten with the settings of the imported driver profile.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select the driver profile to overwrite.

   The driver profile marked with this symbol can be overwritten.
4. "Import driver profile (USB)"

   Select USB storage device as needed.
5. Select the driver profile to be imported.

Displaying driver profiles during start

The driver profiles can be displayed during each start to select the desired profile.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. "Show driver profiles at startup"

System limits

A clear assignment between the remote control and driver may not be possible in the following cases, for example.

- ▷ The passenger unlocks the vehicle with his or her own remote control, but another person is driving.
- ▷ The driver unlocks the vehicle via Comfort Access and has multiple remote controls with him or her.
- ▷ The driver changes, but the vehicle is not locked and unlocked.
- ▷ Multiple remote controls are located outside of the vehicle.

SETTINGS

General information

Depending on your vehicle's equipment and the country version, various settings for opening and closing are possible.

These settings are stored for the driver profile, refer to page 61, currently used.

Unlocking

Doors

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. "Driver's door" or "All doors"
5. Select desired setting:
   - ▷ "Driver's door only"

     Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.
   - ▷ "All doors"

     The entire vehicle is unlocked.

Tailgate

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. Select desired setting:
   - ▷ "Tailgate"

     Depending on your vehicle's optional features, the tailgate is either unlocked or opened.
   - ▷ "Tailgate and door(s)"

     Depending on your vehicle's optional features, the tailgate is either unlocked or opened and the doors unlocked.

Depending on optional features and country version, this setting is not offered in some cases.

Adjusting the last seat and mirror position

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select driver profile.

   The setting can be made for the driver profile marked with this symbol.
4. "Last seat position automatic"

When the vehicle is unlocked, the driver's seat and exterior mirrors resume their last set positions.

The most recent position is independent of the positions saved via the seat memory.

Automatic locking

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. Select desired setting:
   - ▷ "Lock automatically"

     The vehicle locks automatically after a short period of time if no door is opened after unlocking.
   - ▷ "Lock after starting to drive"

     The vehicle locks automatically after you drive off.

Automatic unlocking

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. "Unlock at end of trip"

After the engine is switched off by pressing the Start/Stop button, the locked vehicle is automatically unlocked.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. Deactivate or activate the desired confirmation signals.
   - ▷ "Flash for lock/unlock"

     Unlocking is signaled by two flashes, locking by one.
   - ▷ With alarm system:

     "Acoustic signal for lock/unlock"

     Unlocking is signaled by one honk of the horn.

ALARM SYSTEM

General information

When the vehicle is locked, the vehicle alarm system reacts to the following changes:

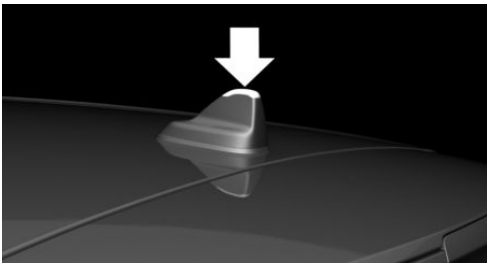
- ▷ Unauthorized opening of a door, the hood or the tailgate.
- ▷ Movements in the car's interior.
- ▷ Changes in the vehicle tilt, e. g., during attempts at stealing a wheel or when towing the vehicle.
- ▷ Disconnected battery voltage.
- ▷ Improper use of the socket for Onboard Diagnosis.

The alarm system signals these changes visually and acoustically:

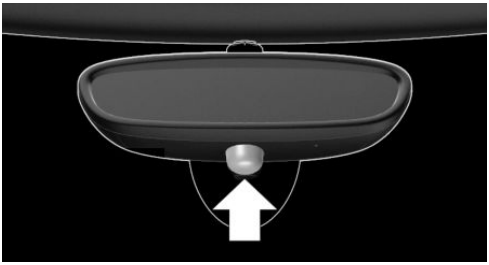
- ▷ Acoustic alarm.

  Depending on local regulations, the acoustic alarm may be suppressed.
- ▷ By switching on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ By flashing the daytime running lights.

Overview



Indicator light in the roof fin.



Indicator light on the interior mirror.

Switching on/off

When you unlock and lock the vehicle, either with the remote control or with Comfort Access, the alarm system is switched off and on at the same time.

Opening the doors with the alarm system switched on

The alarm system is triggered when a door is opened if the door was unlocked using the integrated key in the door lock.

Switching off the alarm, refer to page 66.

Opening the tailgate with the alarm system switched on

The tailgate can be opened even when the alarm system is switched on.

After the tailgate is closed, it is locked and monitored again provided the doors are locked. The hazard warning system flashes once.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

- ▷ Press button on the remote control and hold for at least 3 seconds.
- ▷ Briefly press the button on the remote control three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Signals of the indicator lights

- ▷ The indicator light flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  The alarm system is switched on.
- ▷ Indicator light flashes for approx. 10 seconds, then it flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not active, as doors, hood, or tailgate are not correctly closed. Correctly closed access points are secured.

  When the still open access points are closed, interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor will be switched on.
- ▷ The indicator light goes out after unlocking:

  The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- ▷ The indicator light flashes after unlocking until the engine ignition is switched on, but no longer than approx. 5 minutes:

  An alarm has been triggered.

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the vehicle is towed.

Interior motion sensor

The windows and the glass sunroof must be closed for the system to function properly.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

General information

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can trigger an alarm, although no unauthorized action occurred.

Possible situations for an unwanted alarm:

- ▷ In automatic vehicle washes.
- ▷ In duplex garages.
- ▷ During transport on trains carrying vehicles, at sea or on a trailer.
- ▷ With animals in the vehicle.
- ▷ At the gas station: if the vehicle is locked after refueling starts.

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor can be switched off in such situations.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the remote control button again within 10 seconds as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator light lights up for approx. 2 seconds and then continues to flash.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are switched off until the vehicle is locked again.

Switching off the alarm

- ▷ Unlock the vehicle with the remote control or switch on the ignition, if needed through emergency detection of remote control, refer to page 53.
- ▷ With Comfort Access: If you have the remote control with you, unlock the vehicle using the button on the driver's side or passenger side door.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

POWER WINDOWS

General information

If an accident of a certain severity occurs, the windows are automatically closed except a gap.

Safety information

WARNING

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the windows is clear during opening and closing.◀

Overview

Power windows

Safety switch

Opening

▷ Press the switch to the resistance point.

The window opens while the switch is being held.

▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point.

The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Convenient opening via the remote control, refer to page 51.

Closing

▷ Pull the switch to the resistance point.

The window closes while the switch is being held.

▷ Pull the switch beyond the resistance point.

The window closes automatically if the door is closed. Pulling the switch again stops the motion.

Convenient closing via the remote control, refer to page 51.

Closing via Comfort Access, refer to page 56.

Jam protection system

General information

If closing force exceeds a specific threshold as a window closes, closing is interrupted.

The window opens slightly.

Safety information

WARNING

Accessories on the windows such as antennas can impact jam protection. There is a risk of injury. Do not install accessories in the area of movement of the windows.◀

Closing without the jam protection system

In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.

The window closes with limited jam protection. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.

2. Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.

   The window closes without jam protection.

Safety switch

General information

The safety switch in the driver's door can be used to prevent children, for instance from opening and closing the rear windows using the switches in the rear.

If an accident of a certain severity occurs, the safety function is switched off automatically.

Switching on/off

Press button.

The LED lights up if the safety function is switched on.

Malfunction

General information

In certain situations a window can only be operated to a limited extent.

- ▷ After a power failure during the opening or closing process, the a window can only be operated to a limited extent. The system must be initialized in this case.
- ▷ The power window motors are equipped with overheating protection. If a window is opened and closed several times within a short period of time, the overheating protection switches the motor off temporarily. Depending on the degree of overheating, it may only be possible to close the window or it may not be possible to operate it at all.

  In this case: allow the power window motor to cool down.

Initializing the system

The system can be initialized when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running.

During initialization, the affected window closes without jam protection.

WARNING

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the windows is clear during opening and closing.◀

1. Open the affected window completely.
2. Pull the switch to the resistance point and hold.

   The window closes.
3. Continue holding the switch pulled to the resistance point.

   The window opens and closes once or twice after approx. 15 seconds, depending on the vehicle's equipment.
4. Release switch.

PANORAMIC GLASS SUNROOF

General information

In the event of a severe accident, the glass sunroof is automatically closed.

Safety information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the glass sunroof. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the glass sunroof is clear during opening and closing.◀

Overview

Tilting the glass sunroof

Press back the switch up to or beyond the resistance point and release it.

The glass sunroof is raised.

Opening glass sunroof

When the glass sunroof is closed

Press the switch back beyond the resistance point and release it twice.

The glass sunroof is opened.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

With the glass sunroof completely raised

▷ Slide switch back to the resistance point and hold.

The glass sunroof is opened as long as the switch is pressed.

▷ Press the switch back beyond the resistance point and release it.

The glass sunroof is opened.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Comfort position

In some models, the wind noises in the car's interior are lowest when the glass sunroof is not fully open. In these models, the automatic function initially only opens the glass sunroof up to this comfort position.

Pressing the switch again opens the glass sunroof fully.

Closing glass sunroof

With the glass sunroof open

▷ Slide switch forward to the resistance point and hold.

The glass sunroof is closed as long as the switch is pressed and stops in the raised position.

▷ Press the switch forward beyond the resistance point and release it.

The glass sunroof is closed and stops in the raised position.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

▷ Press the switch forward beyond the resistance point and release it twice.

The glass sunroof is closed.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

With the glass sunroof completely raised

Press the switch forward beyond the resistance point and release it.

The glass sunroof is closed.

Jam protection system

General information

If the closing force exceeds a specific value as a glass sunroof closes, the closing action is interrupted.

The glass sunroof opens slightly.

Closing without the jam protection system

If there is an external danger, proceed as follows:

1. Push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold it.

   The glass sunroof closes with limited jam protection. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.
2. Push the switch forward again past the resistance point and hold until the glass sunroof closes without jam protection. Make sure that the closing area is clear.

Initializing after a power interruption

After a power failure during the opening or closing process, the glass sunroof can only be operated to a limited extent. The system must be initialized in this case. MINI recommends having this work performed only by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

SETTINGS

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

SITTING SAFELY

An ideal seating position that meets the needs of the occupants can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

In the event of an accident, the correct seating position plays an important role. Follow the information in the following chapters:

- ▷ Seats, refer to page 71.
- ▷ Safety belts, refer to page 75.
- ▷ Head restraints, refer to page 76.
- ▷ Airbags, refer to page 134.

FRONT SEATS

Safety information

WARNING

Seat adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected movements of the seat. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of an accident. Only adjust the seat on the driver's side when the vehicle is stationary.◀

WARNING

With a backrest inclined too far to the rear, the efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts can no longer be ensured. There is a risk of sliding under the safety belt in an accident. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Adjust the seat prior to starting the trip. Adjust the backrest so that it is in the most upright position as possible and do not adjust again while driving.◀

WARNING

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.◀

Manually adjustable seats

Overview

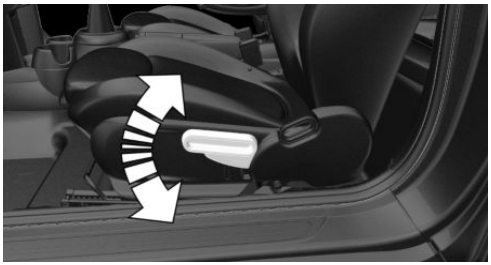
1 Forward/backward
2 Thigh support
3 Height
4 Backrest tilt

Forward/backward

Pull the lever and slide the seat in the desired direction.

After releasing the lever, move the seat forward or back slightly making sure it engages properly.

Height



Pull the lever up or press it down as often as needed to reach the desired height.

Backrest tilt

Pull the lever and apply your weight to the backrest or lift it off, as necessary.

Lumbar support

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.

Turn the wheel in order to increase or decrease the curvature.

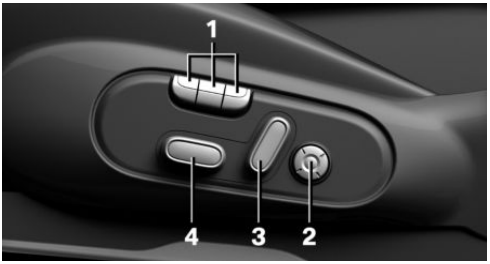
Electrically adjustable seats

General information

The seat setting for the driver's seat is stored for the profile currently used. When the vehicle is unlocked via the remote control, the position is automatically retrieved if the function, refer to page 64, is activated for this purpose.

The current seat position can be stored using the memory function, refer to page 79.

Overview



1 Memory function

2 Lumbar support

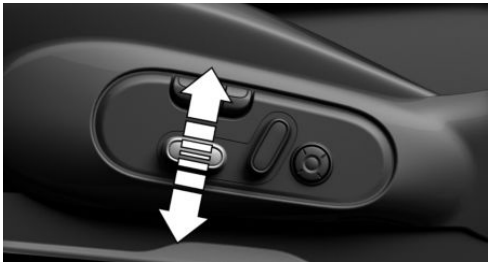
3 Backrest tilt

4 Forward/backward, height, seat tilt

Forward/backward

Push switch forward or backward.

Height

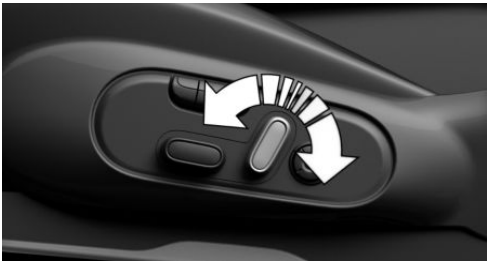


Push switch up or down.

Seat tilt

Move switch up or down.

Backrest tilt



Move switch forward or backward.

Lumbar support

Concept

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.

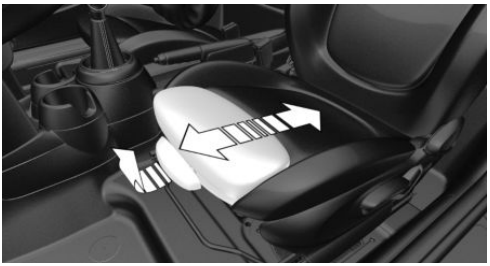
Settings

- ▷ Press the front/rear section of the button:

  The curvature is increased/decreased.
- ▷ Press the upper/lower section of the button:

  The curvature is shifted up/down.

Thigh support



Pull the lever at the front of the seat and adjust the thigh support.

Front seat heating

Overview

Seat heating

Switching on

Press button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

If the trip is continued within approx. 15 minutes after a stop, seat heating is activated automatically with the temperature selected last.

When GREEN Mode is activated, refer to page 210, the heater output is reduced.

Switching off

Press and hold the button, until the LEDs go out.

REAR SEATS

Safety information

WARNING

There is a risk of jamming when folding down the center armrest in the rear. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the center armrest is clear during folding down.◀

WARNING

Unexpected movements of the backrest while driving may occur due to unintentional unlocking of the rear backrests by the straps. There is a risk of injury. Do not fasten any objects to the straps for unlocking the rear backrests.◀

Forward/backward

General information

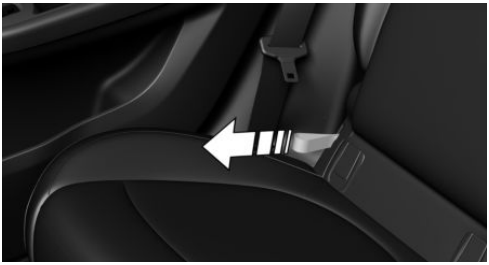
The rear seat is divided at a ratio of 60 to 40. The left seat is connected to the center section.

Settings

Pull the lever and slide the seat in the desired direction.

After releasing the lever, move the seat forward or back slightly making sure it engages properly.

Backrest tilt



Pull the strap and apply your weight to the backrest or lift it off, as necessary.

SAFETY BELTS

Number of safety belts and safety belt buckles

The vehicle is fitted with five safety belts to ensure occupant safety. However, they can only offer protection when adjusted correctly.

The two outer safety belt buckles of the rear seat are intended for the persons sitting on the left and right.

The center safety belt buckle of the rear seat is intended for the person sitting in the middle.

General information

Always make sure that safety belts are being worn by all occupants before driving off. Although airbags enhance safety by providing added protection, they are not a substitute for safety belts.

If needed, disengage the safety belt in the rear from the belt buckle on the side.

The upper shoulder strap's anchorage point will be correct for adult seat occupants of every build if the seat is correctly adjusted.

Safety information

WARNING

Use of a safety belt to buckle more than one person will potentially defeat the ability of the safety belt to serve its protective function.There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Infants and children are not allowed on an occupant's lap, but must be transported and secured in designated child restraint systems.◀

WARNING

The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that all occupants are wearing safety belts correctly.◀

WARNING

The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, may not be fully functional or fail in the following situations:

- ▷ The safety belts or safety belt buckles are damaged, soiled, or changed in any other way.
- ▷ Belt tensioners or belt retractors were modified.

Safety belts can be imperceptibly damaged in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not modify safety belts, safety belt buckles, belt tensioners, belt retractors or belt anchors and keep them clean. Have the safety belts checked after an accident at the dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

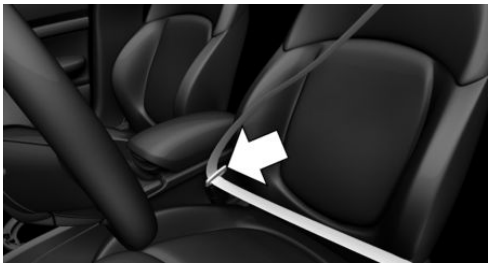
Correct use of safety belts

- ▷ Wear the safety belt twist-free and tight to your body over your lap and shoulders.
- ▷ Wear the safety belt deep on your hips over your lap. The safety belt may not press on your stomach.
- ▷ Do not rub the safety belt against sharp edges, or guide it or jam it in across hard or fragile objects.
- ▷ Avoid thick clothing.
- ▷ Re-tighten the safety belt frequently upward around your upper body.

Buckling the safety belt

1. Slowly guide the safety belt out of the holder when fastening it.

2. Insert the tongue plate into the safety belt buckle. The safety belt buckle must engage audibly.

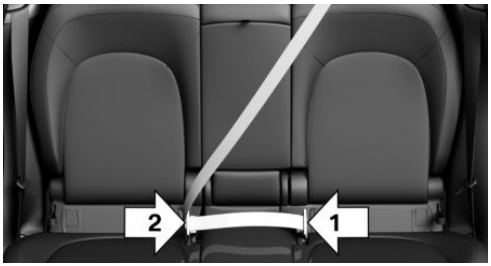


Unbuckling the safety belt

1. Hold the safety belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the belt buckle.
3. Guide the safety belt back into its roll-up mechanism.

Middle safety belt in the rear

Buckling the safety belt

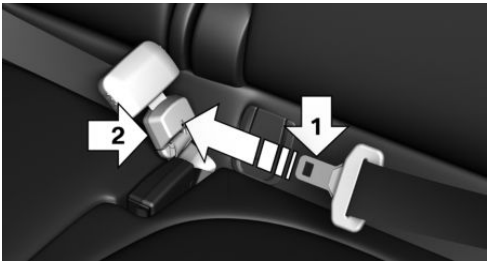


1. Pull the buckle tongues out of the mounts in the roof.
2. Insert the lower buckle tongue in the belt buckle, arrow 1.
3. Insert the upper buckle tongue in the belt buckle, arrow 2.

   Safety belt buckles must audibly click into place.

Unbuckling the safety belt

1. Hold the safety belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the belt buckle.
3. Use the buckle tongue, arrow 1, to open the second safety belt buckle, arrow 2.



4. Guide the safety belt to the mount in the roofliner.

Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat

Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator light lights up and a signal sounds. Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly. The safety belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS

Safety information

WARNING

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

▷ Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.

▷ Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.

▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.◀

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.◀

WARNING

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.

▷ Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.

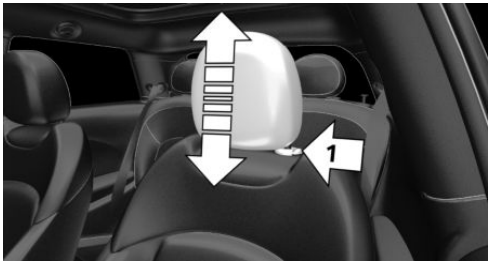
▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.

▷ Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.◀

Adjusting the height: John Cooper Works sport seat

The height of the head restraints cannot be adjusted.

Adjusting the height



▷ To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.

▷ To raise: push the head restraint up.

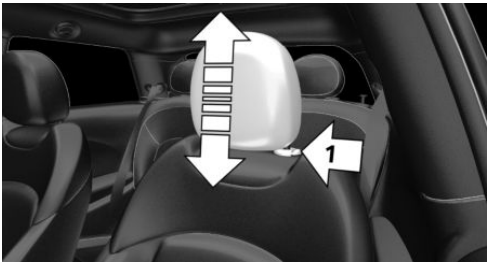
After setting the height, move the head restraint up or down slightly, making sure it engages properly.

Removing: John Cooper Works sport seat

The head restraints cannot be removed.

Removing

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.



1. Fold the seat backrest forward if needed.
2. Pull head restraint up as far as possible.
3. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

Installing

Proceed in the reverse order to install the head restraint.

REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS

Safety information

WARNING

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

▷ Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.

- ▷ Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- ▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.◀

WARNING

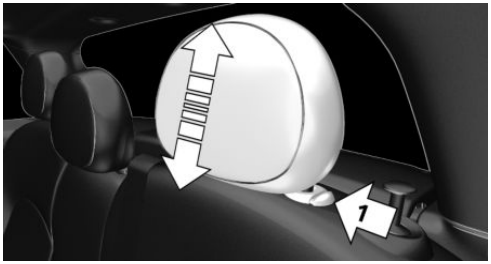
Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.◀

WARNING

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- ▷ Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.◀

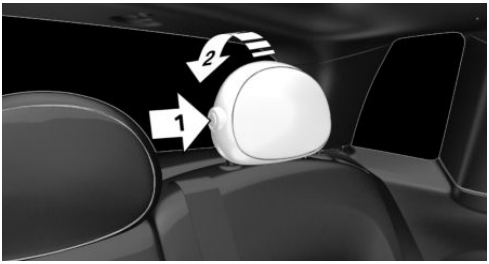
Adjusting the height



- ▷ To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
- ▷ To raise: push the head restraint up.

After setting the height, move the head restraint up or down slightly, making sure it engages properly.

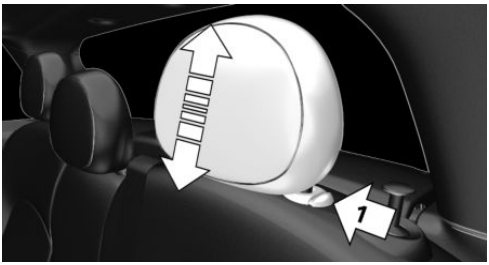
Fold down



- ▷ To fold down: press the button, arrow 1, and press down the head restraint, arrow 2.
- ▷ Forward: fold the head restraint toward the front as far as it will go. Make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Removing

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.



1. Fold down the rear seat backrest, refer to page 196, in question.
2. Pull head restraint up against the resistance.
3. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

Installing

Proceed in the reverse order to install the head restraint.

MEMORY FUNCTION

Concept

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- ▷ Seat position.
- ▷ Exterior mirror position.
- ▷ Height of the Head-up Display.

General information

Different settings can be assigned to two memory locations.

The adjustment of the lumbar support is not stored.

Safety information

WARNING

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.◀

WARNING

Using the memory function while driving can lead to unexpected movements of the seat. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of an accident. Only retrieve the memory function when the vehicle is stationary.◀

Overview

Storing

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Set the desired position.
3. SET Press button. The LED in the button lights up.
4. Press selected button 1 or 2 while the LED is lit. The LED goes out.

Calling up settings

The stored position is called up automatically.

Press selected button 1 or 2.

The procedure stops when a switch for setting the seat or one of the memory buttons is pressed.

While driving, the seat position adjustment on the driver's side is interrupted after a short time.

Calling up of a seat position deactivated

After a brief period, calling up stored seat positions is deactivated to save battery power.

To reactivate calling up of a seat position:

- ▷ Open or close the door or tailgate.
- ▷ Press a button on the remote control.
- ▷ Press the Start/Stop button.

MIRRORS

Exterior mirrors

General information

The mirror on the front passenger side is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

The mirror setting is stored for the driver profile currently in use. When the vehicle is unlocked via the remote control, the position is automatically retrieved if the function, refer to page 64, is activated for this purpose.

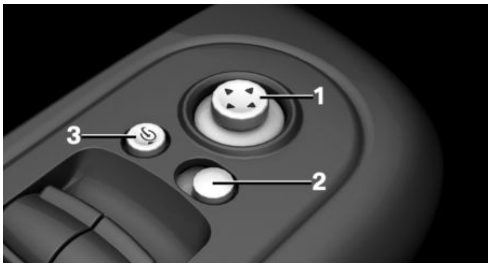
The current exterior mirror position can be stored using the memory function, refer to page 79.

Safety information

WARNING

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to the traffic behind could be incorrectly estimated, for instance while changing lanes. There is a risk of an accident. Estimate the distance to the traffic behind by looking over your shoulder.◂

Overview



1 Settings
2 Selecting a mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor
3 Folding in and out

Selecting a mirror

To change over to the other mirror:

Slide the switch.

Adjusting electrically

Press button.

The mirror movement follows the button movement.

Malfunction

In case of an electrical malfunction, adjust the mirror by pressing the edges of the mirror glass.

Folding in and out

NOTE

Depending on the vehicle width, the vehicle can be damaged in vehicle washes. There is a risk of damage to property. Before washing, fold in the mirrors by hand or with the button.◂

Press button.

Folding is only possible up to a speed of approx. 15 mph/20 km/h.

Folding the mirrors in and out is helpful in the following situations:

▷ In vehicle washes.

▷ On narrow roads.

Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx.
25 mph/40 km/h.

Automatic heating

Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated whenever the ignition is switched on.

Automatic dimming feature

The exterior mirror on the driver's side is automatically dimmed. Photocells in the car's interior mirror, refer to page 81, are used to control this.

Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror

Concept

If reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the front passenger side is tilted downward. This improves your view of the curb and other low-lying obstacles when parking, for instance.

Activating

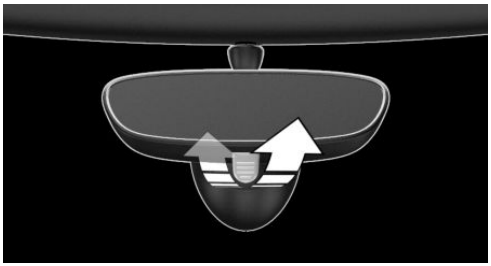
1. Slide the switch to the driver's side mirror position.
2. Engage selector lever position R.

Deactivating

Slide the switch to the passenger's side mirror position.

Interior mirror, manually dimmable

Flip lever



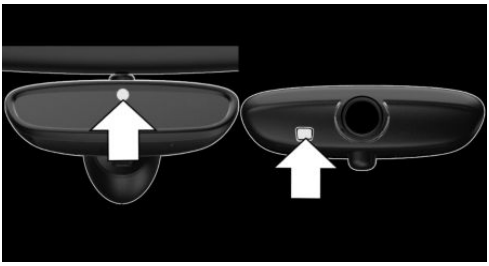
To reduce the blinding effect of the interior mirror, flip the lever forward.

Turn knob

Turn the knob to reduce the blinding effect by the interior mirror.

Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature

Overview



Photocells are used for control:

- ▷ In the mirror glass.
- ▷ On the back of the mirror.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Keep the photocells clean.
- ▷ Do not cover the area between the interior mirror and the windshield.

STEERING WHEEL

Safety information

WARNING

Steering wheel adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is stationary only.◀

Settings

1. Fold the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seating position.
3. Fold the lever back up.

TRANSPORTING CHILDREN SAFELY

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

THE RIGHT PLACE FOR CHILDREN

Safety information

WARNING

Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.◀

Always transport children in the rear seat

General information

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the rear seat.

Transport children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft/150 cm only in the rear seat in suitable child restraint systems designed for the age, weight and size of the child. Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, weight, and size.

Safety information

WARNING

The safety belt cannot be fastened correctly on children shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm without suitable additional child restraint systems. The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Secure children shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm using suitable child restraint systems.◀

Children on the front passenger seat

General information

Before using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, ensure that the front, knee, and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated. Automatic deactivation of front-seat passenger airbags, refer to page 136.

Safety information

WARNING

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light lights up.◀

WARNING

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.◀

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEMS

General information

Pay attention to the specifications of the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using child restraint systems.

Safety information

WARNING

The protective effect of damaged child restraint systems or of child restraint systems exposed to an accident and their fastening systems can be limited or lost. A child can e.g.,not sufficiently restrained, for instance in the event of an accident or braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Have damaged child restraint systems or of child restraint systems exposed to an accident and their fastening systems checked and possibly replaced by the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

WARNING

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.◀

On the rear seats

If the vehicle is equipped with a sliding rear seat row: move the seats to the rearmost position before mounting a child restraint system.

On the front passenger seat

Deactivating airbags

WARNING

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light lights up.◀

After installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Deactivate the front-seat passenger airbags automatically, refer to page 136.

Seat position and height

Before installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as possible and adjust its height to the highest and thus

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

best possible position for the belt and to offer optimal protection in the event of an accident.

If the upper anchorage of the safety belt is located in front of the belt guide of the child seat, move the front passenger seat carefully forward until the best possible belt guide position is reached.

Child seat security

The rear safety belts and the front passenger safety belt can be permanently locked to fasten child restraint systems.

Locking the safety belt

1. Pull out the belt strap completely.
2. Secure the child restraint system with the safety belt.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in and pull it tight against the child restraint system. The safety belt is locked.

Unlocking the safety belt

1. Unbuckle the safety belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in completely.

In some cases it may be necessary to separate the lower belt attachment. Safety belts, refer to page 75.

LATCH CHILD RESTRAINT FIXING SYSTEM

General information

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for Children.

Pay attention to the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer when installing and using LATCH child restraint fixing systems.

Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors

The lower anchors may be used to attach the CRS to the vehicle seat up to a combined child and CRS weight of 65 lb/30 kg when the child is restrained by the internal harnesses.

Safety information

WARNING

If the LATCH child restraint fixing systems are not correctly engaged, the protective effect of the LATCH child restraint fixing system can be limited. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the lower anchors are securely engaged and that the LATCH child restraint fixing system fits securely against the backrest.◀

Position

Symbol	Meaning
	The corresponding symbol shows the mounts for the lower LATCH anchors. Seats equipped with lower anchors are marked with a pair, 2, of LATCH symbols. For vehicles equipped with a middle seat: It is not recommended to use the inner lower anchors of standard outer LATCH positions to fasten a child restraint system on the middle seat. Use the vehicle safety belt instead for the middle seat.

Before installing LATCH child restraint fixing systems

Pull the safety belt away from the area of the child restraint system.

Assembly of LATCH child restraint fixing systems

1. Install child restraint system, see manufacturer's information.
2. Ensure that both LATCH anchors are properly connected.

Child restraint systems with tether strap

Safety information

WARNING

If the upper retaining strap is incorrectly used for the child restraint system, the protective effect can be reduced. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the upper retaining strap is not guided across sharp edges and without twisting to the upper retaining strap.◀

WARNING

If the rear backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or there is none. In particular situations, for instance braking maneuvers or in case of an accident, the rear backrest can fold forward. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the rear backrests are locked.◀

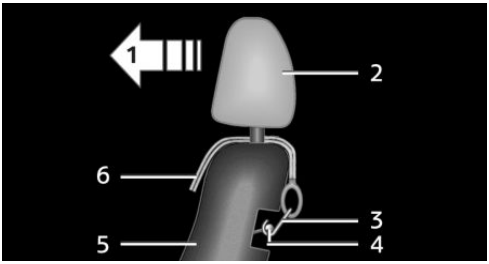
NOTE

The anchors for the upper retaining straps of child restraint systems are only provided for these retaining straps. When other objects are mounted, the anchors can be damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Only mount child restraint systems to the upper retaining straps.◀

Anchors

The respective symbol shows the anchor for the upper retaining strap. Seats with an upper top tether are marked with this symbol. It can be found on the rear seat backrest or the rear window shelf.

Routing the retaining strap



1 Direction of travel
2 Head restraint
3 Hook for upper retaining strap
4 Anchor
5 Seat backrest
6 Upper retaining strap

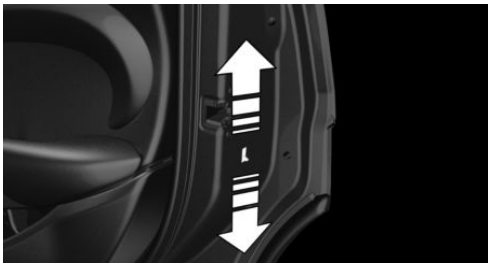
Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the anchor

1. Raise the head restraint, if needed.
2. On the rear seat: Guide the upper retaining strap between the supports of the head restraint.
3. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the anchor on the rear seat.
4. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it down.

LOCKING THE DOORS AND WINDOWS

Doors



Push the locking lever on the rear doors up.

The door can now be opened from the outside only.

Safety switch for the rear

Press button on the driver's door if children are being transported in the rear.

This locks various functions so that they cannot be operated from the rear: safety switch, refer to page 68.

DRIVING

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

START/STOP BUTTON

Concept

Pressing the Start/Stop button switches the ignition on or off and starts the engine.

Steptronic transmission: the engine starts in selector lever position P or N with the brake pedal pressed when you press the Start/Stop button.

Manual transmission: the engine starts with the clutch pedal pressed when the Start/Stop button is pressed.

Ignition on

Manual transmission: press the Start/Stop button without stepping on the clutch pedal.

Steptronic transmission: press the Start/Stop button, and do not press on the brake pedal at the same time.

All vehicle systems are ready for operation.

Most of the indicator/warning lights in the instrument cluster light up for a varied length of time.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers.

Ignition off

Manual transmission: press the Start/Stop button again without stepping on the clutch pedal.

Steptronic transmission: shift to selector lever position P, press the Start/Stop button again without stepping on the brake.

All indicator lights in the instrument cluster go out.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers.

Safety measures

The ignition is switched off automatically in the following situations while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is off:

- ▷ When locking the vehicle, and when the low beams are switched on.
- ▷ Shortly before the battery is discharged completely, so that the engine can still be started. This function is only available when the low beams are switched off.
- ▷ When opening or closing the driver door, if the driver's safety belt is unbuckled and the low beams are switched off.
- ▷ While the driver's safety belt is unbuckled with driver's door open and low beams off.
- ▷ When the front doors are opened if there is no other person sitting in the front seats.
- ▷ The low beams switch to parking lights after some minutes of no use.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

Radio-ready state

General information

In the radio-ready state, certain power consumers remain ready for operation.

Activating

With the engine running, press the Start/Stop button.

If the engine is not running and the ignition is switched on: the system automatically activates radio-ready state when the door is opened if the lights are switched off or the daytime running lights are switched on.

The radio-ready state remains active if, for instance the ignition is automatically switched off for the following reasons:

- ▷ Opening or closing the driver's door.
- ▷ Unfastening of the driver's safety belt.
- ▷ When automatically switching from low beams to parking lights.

Switching off automatically

The radio-ready state is switched off automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ If the driver's or front passenger door is opened when exiting the vehicle, with the engine switched off manually.
- ▷ If the ignition is switched off manually with the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ After approx. 8 minutes.
- ▷ When the vehicle is locked using the central locking system.
- ▷ Shortly before the battery is discharged completely, so that the engine can still be started.

STARTING THE ENGINE

Safety information

DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.◀

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.◀

NOTE

In the case of repeated starting attempts or repeated starting in quick succession, the fuel is not burned or is inadequately burned. The catalytic converter can overheat. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid repeated starting in quick succession.◀

Steptronic transmission

Starting the engine

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Engage selector lever position P or N.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a brief time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

Manual transmission

Starting the engine

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press on the clutch pedal and shift to neutral.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a brief time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

ENGINE STOP

Safety information

WARNING

Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.◀

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.◀

Steptronic transmission

Switching off the engine

1. When the vehicle is stationary, apply the parking brake.
2. Engage selector lever position P.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off.

   The radio-ready state is switched on.

Manual transmission

Switching off the engine

1. With the vehicle at a standstill, press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off.

   The radio-ready state is switched on.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Set the parking brake.

AUTO START/STOP FUNCTION

Concept

The Auto Start/Stop function helps save fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, for instance in traffic congestion or at traffic lights. The ignition remains switched on. The engine starts automatically for driving off.

After every start of the engine using the Start/Stop button, the Auto Start/Stop function is in the last selected state, refer to page 92. When the Auto Start/Stop function is active, it is available when the vehicle is traveling faster than about 3 mph/5 km/h.

Depending on the selected driving mode, refer to page 155, the system is automatically activated or deactivated.

Engine stop

Functional requirements

The engine is switched off automatically during a stop under the following conditions:

Manual transmission:

- ▷ Neutral is engaged and the clutch pedal is not pressed.
- ▷ The driver's safety belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

Steptronic transmission:

- ▷ The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- ▷ The brake pedal remains depressed while the vehicle is stopped.
- ▷ The driver's safety belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

In order to be able to release the brake pedal, engage the selector lever in position P. The engine remains off.

To continue driving depress the brake pedal. When a gear is engaged, the engine starts automatically.

The air flow from the air conditioner is reduced when the engine is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

The display indicates that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready for an Automatic engine start.

The display indicates that the conditions for an automatic engine stop have not been met.

Functional limitations

The engine is not switched off automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ External temperature too low.
- ▷ The external temperature is high and automatic climate control is running.
- ▷ The car's interior has not yet been heated or cooled to the required level.
- ▷ The engine is not yet at operating temperature.
- ▷ The wheels are at a sharp angle or the steering wheel is being turned.
- ▷ After driving in reverse.
- ▷ Fogging of the windows when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- ▷ The vehicle battery charge is very low.
- ▷ At higher elevations.
- ▷ The hood is unlocked.
- ▷ The parking assistant is activated.
- ▷ Stop-and-go traffic.
- ▷ Selector lever in selector lever position R, N or M/S.

Starting the engine

The engine starts automatically under the following conditions:

- ▷ Manual transmission: clutch pedal is pressed.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: by releasing the brake pedal.

After the engine starts, accelerate as usual.

Safety mode

After the engine switches off automatically, it will not start again automatically if any one of the following conditions are met:

- ▷ The driver's safety belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is open.
- ▷ The hood was unlocked.

Some indicator lights light up for a varied length of time.

The engine can only be started via the Start/Stop button.

Functional limitations

Even if driving off was not intended, the deactivated engine starts up automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ Excessive warming of the car's interior when the air conditioning is switched on.
- ▷ The steering wheel is turned.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: change from selector lever position D to R, N or M/S.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: change from selector lever position P to R, N, D or M/S.
- ▷ The vehicle begins rolling.
- ▷ Fogging of the windows when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- ▷ The vehicle battery charge is very low.
- ▷ Excessive cooling of the car's interior when the heating is switched on.
- ▷ Manual transmission: low brake vacuum pressure; this can occur, for instance if the brake pedal is depressed a number of times in succession.

Switching the system on/off

Using the button

Press button.

- ▷ LED comes on: auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.

  The engine is started during an automatic engine stop.

  The engine can only be stopped or started via the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ LED goes out: auto Start/Stop function is activated.

Switching off the vehicle during an automatic engine stop

During an automatic engine stop, the vehicle can be switched off permanently, for instance when leaving it.

Steptronic transmission:

1. Engage selector lever position P.
2. Press the Start/Stop button. The ignition is switched off. The Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
3. Set the parking brake.

Manual transmission:

1. Press the Start/Stop button. The ignition is switched off. The Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Set the parking brake.

Engine start as usual via Start/Stop button.

Automatic deactivation

In certain situations, the Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety reasons, for instance if no driver is detected.

Malfunction

The Auto Start/Stop function no longer switches off the engine automatically. A Check Control message is displayed. It is possible to continue driving. Have the system checked by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

PARKING BRAKE

Concept

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling when it is parked.

Safety information

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.◀

WARNING

Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for instance due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.◀

Overview

Parking brake

Setting

With a stationary vehicle

Pull the switch.

The LED lights up.

PARK (P) The indicator light lights up red. The parking brake is set.

Depending on the stopping situation, the parking brake is engaged automatically.

Steptronic transmission: in some parking situations, the parking brake is automatically engaged, when selector lever position P is engaged. In these cases, the parking brake is released automatically when you leave the selector lever position P.

While driving

To use as emergency brake while driving:

Pull the switch and hold it. The vehicle brakes hard while the switch is being pulled.

PARK (P) The indicator light lights up red, a signal sounds and the brake lights light up.

A Check Control message is displayed.

If the vehicle is decelerated to a complete stop, the parking brake is engaged.

Releasing

Releasing manually

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Manual transmission: press the switch while the brake pedal is pressed.

   Steptronic transmission: press the switch while the brake is pressed or selector lever position P is set.

   The LED and indicator light go out.

   The parking brake is released.

Automatic release in cars with Steptronic transmission

For automatic release, step on the accelerator pedal.

The LED and indicator light go out.

The parking brake is automatically released when you step on the accelerator under the following conditions:

- ▷ Engine on.
- ▷ Drive mode engaged.
- ▷ Driver buckled in and doors closed.

Automatic release in cars with manual transmission

Drive off as usual. The parking brake disengages when the clutch pedal is released.

The LED and indicator light go out.

Under the following conditions, the parking brake is automatically released:

- ▷ Engine on.
- ▷ Gear engaged.
- ▷ Driver buckled in and doors closed.
- ▷ Engine power is sufficient to drive off.

Malfunction

In the event of a failure or malfunction of the parking brake, secure the vehicle against rolling using a wheel chock, for instance when leaving it.

After a power failure

Putting the parking brake into operation

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set.

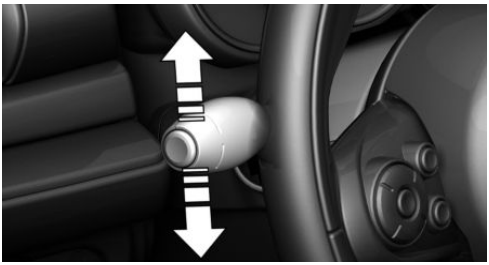
It may take several seconds for the brake to be put into operation. Any sounds associated with this are normal.

PARK (P) The indicator light in the instrument cluster goes out as soon as the parking brake is ready for operation.

TURN SIGNAL, HIGH BEAMS, HEADLIGHT FLASHER

Turn signal

Using turn signals



Press the lever past the resistance point.

Canada: the lever returns into its starting position after actuation. To switch off manually, slightly tap the lever to the resistance point.

Triple turn signal activation

Lightly tap the lever up or down.

The triple turn signal duration can be adjusted.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Exterior lighting"
5. "One-touch turn signal"
6. Select the desired setting.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Signaling briefly

Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

Malfunction

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator light indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

High beams, headlight flasher

Push the lever forward or pull it backward.

- ▷ High beams on, arrow 1.
- ▷ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

WASHER/WIPER SYSTEM

General information

Do not use the wipers if the windshield is dry, as this may damage the wiper blades or cause them to become worn more quickly.

Safety information

WARNING

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.◂

NOTE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.◂

Switching on

Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

- ▷ Resting position of the wipers, position 0.
- ▷ Intermittent operation or rain sensor, position 1.
- ▷ Normal wiper speed, position 2.
- ▷ Fast wiper speed, position 3.

When travel is interrupted with the wiper system switched on: when travel continues, the wipers resume at their previous speed.

Switching off and brief wipe

Press the lever down.

- ▷ Switching off: press the lever down until it reaches its standard position.
- ▷ Brief wipe: press the lever down from the standard position.

  The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

Interval mode or rain sensor

Concept

The rain sensor automatically controls the time between wipes depending on the intensity of the rainfall.

General information

The sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior mirror. Without the rain sensor, the frequency of the wiper operation is preset.

Safety information

NOTE

If the rain sensor is activated, the wipers can accidentally start moving in vehicle washes. There is a risk of damage to property. Deactivate the rain sensor in vehicle washes.◀

Activating

Press the lever up once from its standard position, arrow 1.

Wiping is started.

The LED in the wiper lever is illuminated.

Deactivating

Press the lever back into the standard position.

Setting the frequency or sensitivity of the rain sensor

Turn the thumbwheel to adjust the frequency or sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Up: short interval or high sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Down: long interval or low sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Windshield washer system

Safety information

WARNING

The washer fluid can freeze onto the window at low temperatures and obstruct the view. There is a risk of an accident. Only use the washer systems, if the washer fluid cannot freeze. Use antifreeze, if needed.◀

NOTE

When the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the wash pump cannot work as intended. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use the washer system when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.◀

Cleaning the windshield

Pull the lever.

The system sprays washer fluid on the windshield and activates the wipers briefly.

Windshield washer nozzles

The washer jets are automatically heated whenever the ignition is switched on.

Rear window wiper

Overview

Switching on the rear window wiper

Turn the outer switch upward.

- ▷ Resting position of the wiper, position 0.
- ▷ Intermittent mode, arrow 1. When reverse gear is engaged, the system switches to continuous operation.

Clean the rear window

Turn the outer switch in the desired direction.

- ▷ In resting position: turn the switch downward, arrow 3. The switch automatically returns to its resting position when released.
- ▷ In intermittent mode: turn the switch further, arrow 2. The switch automatically returns to its intermittent position when released.

Fold-away position of the wipers

Concept

The fold-out position enables the wipers to be folded away from the windshield.

General information

Helpful when changing the wiper blades or under frosty conditions, for instance.

Safety information

WARNING

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.◀

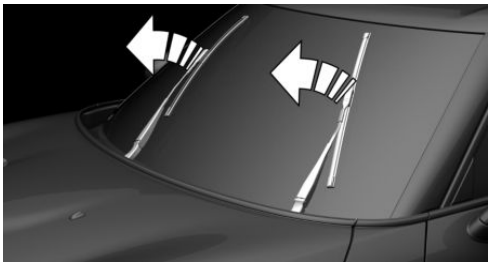
NOTE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.◀

Folding away the wipers

1. Switch the ignition on and off again.
2. Press and hold the wiper level down, until the wipers stop in a close to vertical position.

3. Fold the wipers all the way away from the windshield.



Folding down the wipers

After the wipers are folded back down, the wiper system must be reactivated.

1. Fold the wipers back down onto the windshield.
2. Switch on the ignition.
3. Push wiper lever down. Wipers return to their resting position and are ready again for operation.

CANADA: WIPER SYSTEM

General information

Do not use the wipers if the windshield is dry, as this may damage the wiper blades or cause them to become worn more quickly.

Safety information

WARNING

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.◀

NOTE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.◀

Switching on

Tap up the lever or press it past the resistance point.

- ▷ Normal wiper speed: tap up once.
- ▷ Fast wiper speed: tap up twice or tap once beyond the resistance point.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

Switching off and brief wipe

Press the lever down.

- ▷ To switch off from fast wiper speed: press down twice.
- ▷ To switch off from normal wiper speed: press down once.
- ▷ Brief wipe: press down once.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

Interval mode or rain sensor

Concept

The rain sensor automatically controls the time between wipes depending on the intensity of the rainfall.

General information

The sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior mirror. Without the rain sensor, the frequency of the wiper operation is preset.

Safety information

NOTE

If the rain sensor is activated, the wipers can accidentally start moving in vehicle washes. There is a risk of damage to property. Deactivate the rain sensor in vehicle washes.◀

Activating/deactivating

Press the button on the wiper lever.

Wiping is started.

The LED in the wiper lever is illuminated.

If wipers are frozen to windshield, wiper operation is deactivated.

During trip interruption with the rain sensor switched on: if the trip is resumed within approx. 15 minutes, the rain sensor is automatically activated again.

Setting the frequency or sensitivity of the rain sensor

Turn the thumbwheel to adjust the frequency or sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Up: short interval or high sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Down: long interval or low sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Windshield washer system

Safety information

WARNING

The washer fluid can freeze onto the window at low temperatures and obstruct the view. There is a risk of an accident. Only use the washer systems, if the washer fluid cannot freeze. Use antifreeze, if needed.◀

NOTE

When the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the wash pump cannot work as intended. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use the washer system when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.◀

Cleaning the windshield

Pull the lever.

The system sprays washer fluid on the windshield and activates the wipers briefly.

Windshield washer nozzles

The washer jets are automatically heated whenever the ignition is switched on.

Rear window wiper

Overview

Switching on the rear window wiper

Turn the outer switch upward.

- ▷ Resting position of the wiper, position 0.
- ▷ Intermittent mode, arrow 1. When reverse gear is engaged, the system switches to continuous operation.

Clean the rear window

Turn the outer switch in the desired direction.

▷ In resting position: turn the switch downward, arrow 3. The switch automatically returns to its resting position when released.

▷ In intermittent mode: turn the switch further, arrow 2. The switch automatically returns to its intermittent position when released.

Fold-away position of the wipers

Concept

The fold-out position enables the wipers to be folded away from the windshield.

General information

Helpful when changing the wiper blades or under frosty conditions, for instance.

Safety information

WARNING

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.◀

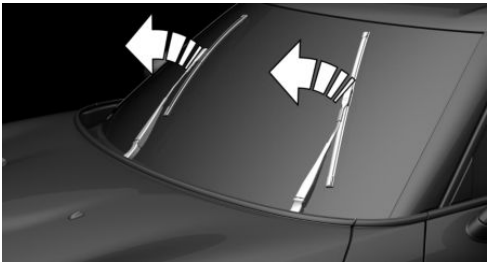
NOTE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.◀

Folding away the wipers

1. Switch the ignition on and off again.
2. Press the wiper lever up beyond the point of resistance and hold it for approx. 3 seconds, until the wipers remain in a nearly vertical position

3. Fold the wipers all the way away from the windshield.



Folding down the wipers

After the wipers are folded back down, the wiper system must be reactivated.

1. Fold the wipers back down onto the windshield.
2. Switch on the ignition.
3. Push wiper lever down. Wipers return to their resting position and are ready again for operation.

WASHER FLUID

General information

All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir.

Use a mixture of tap water and windshield washer concentrate. If desired, a windshield washer concentrate containing antifreeze can be used.

Recommended minimum fill quantity:
0.2 US gal/1 liter.

Safety information

WARNING

Some antifreeze agents can contain harmful substances and are flammable. There is a risk of fire and a risk of injury. Follow the instructions on the containers. Keep antifreeze away from ignition sources. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

United States: the washer fluid mixture ratio is regulated by the U.S. EPA and many individual states; do not exceed the allowable washer fluid dilution ratio limits that apply. Follow the usage instructions on the washer fluid container.

Use of BMW's Windshield Washer Concentrate or the equivalent is recommended.◀

WARNING

Washer fluid can ignite and catch fire on contact with hot engine parts. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Only add washer fluid when the engine is cooled down. Next, fully close the lid of the washer fluid reservoir.◀

NOTE

Silicon-containing additives in the washer fluid for the water-repelling effect on the windows can lead to damage to the washing system. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add silicon-containing additives to the washer fluid.◀

NOTE

Mixing different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze can damage the washing system. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not mix different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze. Follow the information and mixing ratios provided on the containers.◀

Overview

The washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

Malfunction

The use of undiluted windshield washer concentrate or alcohol-based antifreeze can lead to incorrect readings at temperatures below +5 °F/-15 °C.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION

Safety information

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.◀

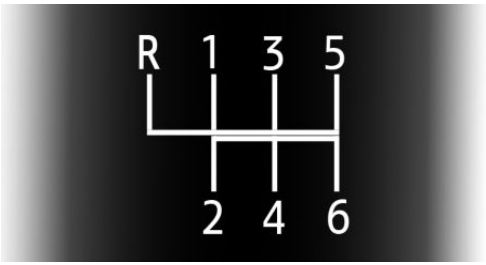
NOTE

When shifting to a lower gear, excessive speeds can damage the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. When shifting into 5th

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

or 6th gear, press the gearshift lever to the right.◀

Schematic diagram



- ▷ 1 – 6: forward gears
- ▷ R: reverse

Shifting

General information

Depending on the engine installation, the engine speed during a shifting operation is adjusted automatically as required for harmonious and dynamic gear shifting.

Reverse gear

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

To overcome the resistance push the gearshift lever dynamically to the left and engage reverse gear with a forward shifting movement.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle

In some situations, the vehicle is to roll without its own power, for instance in a vehicle wash, or be pushed.

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press on the clutch pedal and shift out of a forward gear or reverse.
3. Release the parking brake.

STEPTRONIC TRANSMISSION

Concept

The Steptronic transmission combines the functions of an automatic transmission with the possibility of manual shifting, if needed.

Safety information

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.◀

Selector lever version

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, a transmission with either a latching selector lever or a tap-operated selector lever is installed.

Transmission with a latching selector lever

The selector lever positions P, R, N, and D are selected by moving the selector lever into the

respective selector lever position. The selector lever engages in the selector lever positions.

Selector lever positions

Drive mode D

Selector lever position for normal vehicle operation. All gears for forward travel are activated automatically.

Reverse R

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

Neutral N

The vehicle may be pushed or roll without engine power in selector lever position N, for instance in vehicle washes, refer to page 105.

Parking position P

General information

Selector lever position, for instance for parking the vehicle.

The transmission blocks the drive wheels in selector lever position P.

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.

Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that selector lever position P is set. Otherwise, the vehicle may begin to move.

Engaging selector lever positions: with a latching selector lever

General information

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a drive mode, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.

Functional requirements

The selector lever can only be taken out of selector lever position P if the ignition is on or the engine is running.

Engaging selector lever position D, N, R, or P

With the vehicle stationary, depress the brake pedal before shifting out of selector lever position P or N; otherwise, the shift block will not be deactivated and the shift command will not be executed.

A selector lever lock prevents the following faulty operation:

- ▷ Unintentional shifting into selector lever position P or R.
- ▷ Unintentional shifting from selector lever position P into another selector lever position.

1. To release the selector lever lock: with the brake pedal depressed, press the button on the front of the selector lever.

2. Move the selector lever into the desired position.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

Rolling or pushing the vehicle

General information

In some situations, the vehicle is to roll without its own power for a short distance, for instance in a vehicle wash, or be pushed.

Engaging selector lever position N: with a latching selector lever

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake.
3. Depress the brake pedal.
4. Touch the selector lever lock and engage selector lever position N.
5. Release brake.

   The vehicle may roll.

If there is a malfunction, you may not be able to change the selector lever position.

Manually unlock the transmission lock, if needed, refer to page 107.

Kickdown

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum driving performance. Step on the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position.

Sport program M/S

Concept

The shifting points and shifting times in the Sport program are designed for a sportier driving style. The transmission, for instance shifts up later and the shifting times are shorter.

Activating the sport program

Press the selector lever to the left out of selector lever position D.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, for instance S1.

The sport program of the transmission is activated.

Ending the Sport program

Push the selector lever to the right.

D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Manual mode M/S

Concept

Manual gear-shifting is possible in manual mode.

Activating manual mode

1. Press the selector lever to the left out of selector lever position D, arrow 1.

2. Push the selector lever forward or pull it backward, arrows 2.

Manual mode M/S becomes active and the gear is changed.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, for instance M1.

Shifting

- ▷ To shift down: press the selector lever forward.
- ▷ To shift up: pull the selector lever rearwards.

The Steptronic transmission continues shifting automatically in certain situations, for instance when certain engine speed limits are reached.

Avoiding automatic upshifting

Once a particular engine speed is attained, M/S manual mode is automatically upshifted as needed.

MINI John Cooper Works: once particular engine speeds are attained, upshifting is not automatically performed in M/S manual mode.

For vehicles with Steptronic Sport transmission, automatic shift operations are not performed if one of the following conditions is met:

- ▷ DSC is deactivated.
- ▷ TRACTION is activated.

In addition, there is no downshifting for kickdown.

With the appropriate transmission version, the lowest possible gear can be selected by simultaneously activating kickdown and operating the left shift paddles. This is not possible by switching briefly via the shift paddles from selector lever position D to manual mode M/S.

Ending the manual mode

Push the selector lever to the right.

D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Shift paddles for Steptronic Sport transmission

Concept

The shift paddles on the steering wheel allow you to shift gears quickly while keeping both hands on the steering wheel.

General information

Shifting

Gears will only be shifted at appropriate engine and road speeds, for instance downshifting is not possible if the engine speed is too high.

Short-term manual mode

In selector lever position D, actuating a shift paddle switches into manual mode temporarily.

After conservative driving in manual mode without acceleration or shifting via the shift paddles for a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to automatic mode.

It is possible to switch into automatic mode as follows:

- ▷ Pull and hold right shift paddle.
- ▷ In addition to the briefly pulled right shift paddle, briefly pull the left shift paddle.

Continuous manual mode

In selector lever position S, actuating a shift paddle switches into manual mode permanently.

Shifting

- ▷ To shift up: briefly pull right shift paddle.
- ▷ To shift down: briefly pull left shift paddle.
- ▷ The lowest possible gear can be selected by pulling and holding the left shift paddle.

The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.

Displays in the instrument cluster

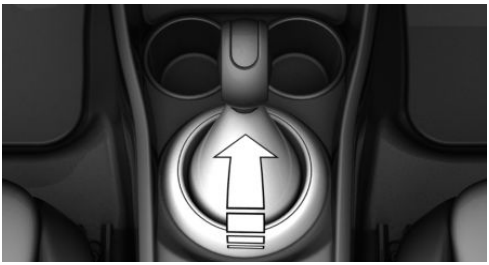
The selector lever position is displayed, for example P.

Releasing the transmission lock manually: with a latching selector lever

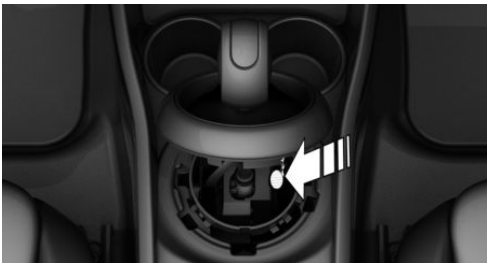
If the selector lever is locked in selector lever position P despite the ignition being switched on, the brake pedal being depressed and the button on the selector lever being pressed, the transmission lock can be unlocked manually:

Before unlocking the transmission lock manually, set the parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

1. Loosen the selector lever sleeve, together with the lower retaining ring, from the center console. To do so, pull the retaining ring upward at the rear edge.



2. Lift the sleeve. Unplug the cable connector, if needed.
3. Using the screwdriver from the onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 251, press the yellow release lever downward, see arrow.



4. Press the button on the front of the selector lever and move the selector lever back slightly.

   Release the release lever.
5. Bring the selector lever into the desired position.

For additional information, see the chapter on tow-starting and towing.

Steptronic Sport transmission: Launch Control

Concept

Launch Control enables optimum acceleration on surfaces with good traction under dry surrounding conditions.

General information

The use of Launch Control causes premature component wear since this function represents a very heavy load for the vehicle.

Do not use Launch Control during the break-in, refer to page 204, period.

To start with Launch Control do not steer the steering wheel.

Functional requirements

Launch Control is available as soon as the engine and transmission are at operating temperature.

The engine is at operating temperature after an uninterrupted trip of at least 6 miles/10 km.

Depending on the external temperature and driving style, the transmission requires an uninterrupted trip of up to 30 miles/50 km in order to reach the operating temperature required for Launch Control.

Start with launch control

While the engine is running:

1.

Press button and select SPORT with the MINI Driving Modes switch.

   The instrument cluster displays TRACTION in combination with SPORT. The DSC OFF indicator light lights up.
2. Engage selector lever position S.
3. With the left foot, forcefully press down on the brake.
4. Step on the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position, kickdown.

   A flag symbol is displayed in the instrument cluster.
5. The starting engine speed adjusts. Within 3 seconds, release the brake.

Repeated use during a trip

After Launch Control has been used, the transmission must cool down for approx. 5 minutes before Launch Control can be used again.

After using Launch Control

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC Dynamic Stability Control again.

System limits

An experienced driver may be able to achieve better acceleration values in DSC OFF mode.

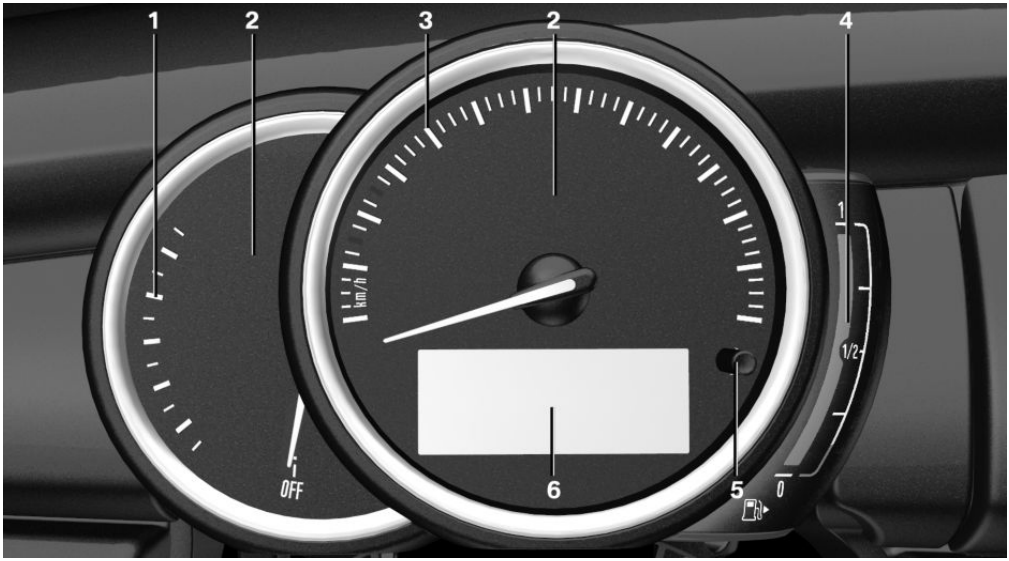
DISPLAYS

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

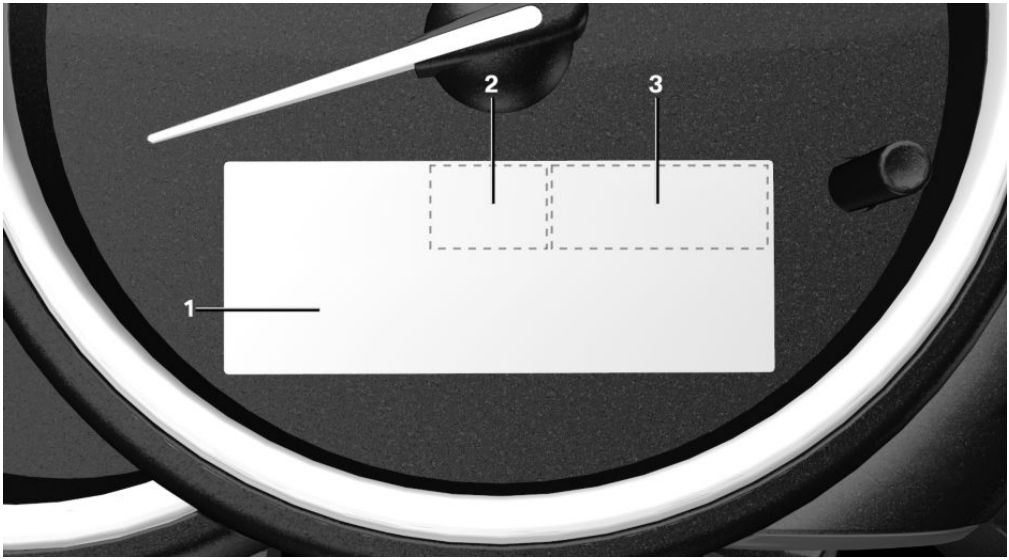
INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Overview



1 Tachometer 114
2 Indicator/warning lights
3 Speedometer
4 Fuel gauge 114
5 Display/reset miles 114
6 Electronic displays 110

Electronic displays



1 Driver assistance systems
Messages, for instance Check Control
Time 115
External temperature 114
Selection lists 118
Total miles/trip odometer 114
Onboard Computer 118

2 Selector lever position 103
Gear shift indicator 116

3 MINI Driving Modes switch status 155

CHECK CONTROL

Concept

The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of malfunctions in the monitored systems.

General information

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lights and SMS text messages in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.

In addition, an acoustic signal may be output and a SMS text message may appear on the Control Display.

Indicator/warning lights

General information

The indicator/warning lights can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when the engine is started or the ignition is switched on.

Red lights

Safety belt reminder

Indicator light flashes or is illuminated: safety belt on the driver or passenger side is not buckled. The safety belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly.

Airbag system

Airbag system and belt tensioner are not working.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Parking brake

PARK (P)

The parking brake is set.

Release the parking brake, refer to page 94.

Brake system

Braking system impaired. Continue to drive moderately.

BRAKE

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Approach control warning

Indicator light illuminates: advance warning is issued, for example when there is the impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

Increase distance.

Indicator light flashes: acute warning of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another vehicle at a relatively high differential speed.

Intervention by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Person warning

If a collision with a person detected in this way is imminent, the symbol lights up and a signal sounds.

Orange lights

Active Cruise Control

The number bars shows the selected distance from the vehicle driving ahead.

Camera-based cruise control, refer to page 158.

Vehicle detection, Active Cruise Control

Indicator light illuminates: a vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

Indicator light flashes: the conditions are not adequate for the system to work.

The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

Yellow lights

Anti-lock Braking System ABS

(ABS)

Braking force boost may not be working. Avoid abrupt braking. Take the longer braking distance into account.

ABS

Have the system immediately checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

The indicator light flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces. The vehicle is stabilized. Reduce speed and modify your driving style to the driving circumstances.

The indicator light lights up: DSC has malfunctioned.

Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

DSC, refer to page 153.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated

DSC is deactivated or DTC is activated.

DSC, refer to page 153, and DTC, refer to page 154.

Flat Tire Monitor FTM

The Flat Tire Monitor signals a loss of tire inflation pressure in a tire.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 142.

Tire Pressure Monitor TPM

The indicator light lights up: the Tire Pressure Monitor reports a low tire inflation pressure or a flat tire. Follow the information in the Check Control message.

The indicator light flashes and then continuously lights up: no flat tire or loss of tire inflation pressure can be detected.

- ▷ Interference caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- ▷ TPM was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- ▷ A wheel without TPM wheel electronics is mounted: have it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.
- ▷ Malfunction: have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 137.

Steering system

Steering system in some cases not working.

Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Emissions

- ▷ The warning light lights up:

  Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.
- ▷ The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Socket for Onboard Diagnosis, refer to page 250.

Green lights

Turn signal

Turn signal switched on.

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator light indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

Turn signal, refer to page 94.

Parking lights, headlight

Parking lights or headlights are switched on.

Parking lights/low beams, headlight control, refer to page 128.

Front fog lights

Front fog lights are switched on.

Front fog lights, refer to page 131.

High-beam Assistant

High-beam Assistant is switched on.

High beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the traffic situation.

High-beam Assistant, refer to page 130.

Cruise control

The system is switched on. It maintains the speed that was set using the control elements on the steering wheel.

Blue lights

High beams

High beams are switched on.

High beams, refer to page 95.

Hiding Check Control messages

Press and hold button on signal lever.

Continuous display

Some Check Control messages are displayed continuously and are not cleared until the malfunction is eliminated. If several malfunctions occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.

The messages can be hidden for approx. 8 seconds. After this time, they are displayed again automatically.

Temporary display

Some Check Control messages are hidden automatically after approx. 20 seconds. The Check Control messages are stored and can be displayed again later.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Check Control"
4. Select the SMS text message.

Display

Check Control

At least one Check Control message is displayed or is stored.

SMS text messages

SMS text messages in combination with a symbol in the instrument cluster explain a Check Control message and the meaning of the indicator/warning lights.

Supplementary SMS text messages

Additional information, such as on the cause of an error or the required action, can be called up via Check Control.

With urgent messages the added text will be automatically displayed on the Control Display.

Further help

Depending on the Check Control message, further help can be selected.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Check Control"

4. Select the desired text message.
5. Select the desired setting.
   - ▷ "Owner's Manual"

     Display additional information about the Check Control message in the Integrated Owner's Manual.
   - ▷ "Service request"

     Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
   - ▷ "MINI Roadside Assistance"

     Contact Roadside Assistance.

Messages after trip completion

Special messages displayed while driving are displayed again after the ignition is switched off.

FUEL GAUGE

The arrow beside the fuel pump symbol shows which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is on.

Vehicle tilt position may cause the display to vary.

Information on refueling, refer to page 218.

The yellow indicator light illuminates, once the fuel reserve is reached.

TACHOMETER

Always avoid engine speeds in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is reduced to protect the engine.

ODOMETER AND TRIP ODOMETER

Concept

The total number of kilometers driven and the number of kilometers driven since the last reset are displayed in the instrument cluster.

Reset the trip odometer

Press the button.

- ▷ The odometer is displayed when the ignition is switched off.
- ▷ When the ignition is switched on, the trip odometer is reset.

EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE

General information

If the indicator drops to +37 °F/+3 °C, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is displayed.

There is an increased risk of ice on roads.

Safety information

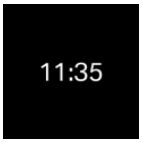
WARNING

Even at temperatures above +37 °F/+3 °C there can be a risk of icy roads, for instance on bridges or shady sections of road. There is a risk of an accident. Modify your driving style to the weather conditions at low temperatures.◀

Display

The external temperature is displayed in the instrument cluster.

TIME



The time is displayed in the instrument cluster.

The time can be set via the Central Information Display (CID).

DATE

The date is displayed in the instrument cluster.

The date can be set via the Central Information Display (CID).

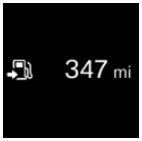
RANGE

Safety information

NOTE

With a driving range of less than 30 miles/50 km the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of damage to property. Refuel promptly.◀

Display



With a low remaining range:

- ▷ A Check Control message is displayed briefly.
- ▷ The remaining range is shown on the Onboard Computer.

▷ With a dynamic driving style, for instance taking curves aggressively, the engine function is not always ensured.

The Check Control message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.

Displaying the cruising range

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. "Range"

CURRENT FUEL CONSUMPTION

Concept

Displays the current fuel consumption. Check whether you are currently driving in an efficient and environmentally-friendly manner.

Displaying the current fuel consumption

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. "Current consumption"

SERVICE REQUIREMENTS

Concept

The function displays the service requirements and the corresponding maintenance scopes.

General information

After the ignition is switched on the instrument cluster briefly displays available driving distance or time to the next scheduled maintenance.

A service advisor can read out the current service requirements from your remote control.

Display

Detailed information on service requirements

More information on the type of service required may be displayed on the Control Display.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service required"

   Required maintenance procedures and legally mandated inspections are displayed.
4. Select an entry to call up detailed information.

Symbols

Symbols	Description
OK	No service is currently required.
	The deadline for scheduled maintenance or a legally mandated inspection is approaching.
	The service deadline has already passed.

Entering appointment dates

Enter the dates for the mandatory vehicle inspections.

Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service required"
4. "Vehicle inspection"
5. "Date:"
6. Select the desired setting.
7. Confirm.

   The entered date is stored.

GEAR SHIFT INDICATOR

Concept

The system recommends the most fuel efficient gear for the current driving situation.

General information

Depending on the vehicle's features and country-specific version, the gear shift indicator is active in the manual mode of the Steptronic transmission and with manual transmission.

Suggestions to shift gear up or down are displayed in the instrument cluster.

Manual transmission: displaying

Example	Description
3	Fuel efficient gear is set.
3▸4	Shift into fuel efficient gear.

Steptronic transmission: displaying

Example	Description
M3	Fuel efficient gear is set.
3▸4	Shift into fuel efficient gear.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

SPEED LIMIT INFO

Speed Limit Info

Concept

Speed Limit Info shows the current maximum permitted speed in the instrument cluster.

General information

The camera at the base of the interior mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as variable overhead sign posts. Traffic signs with extra symbols for wet road conditions, etc., are also detected and compared with the vehicle's onboard data, such as from the rain sensor, and will be displayed depending on the situation.

With the navigation system, the system takes into account the information stored in the navigation data and also displays speed limits present on routes without signs.

Without a navigation system, the system is subject to limitations imposed by technology. Traffic signs with speed limitations are detected and displayed only. Speed limitations due to entering or exiting towns, highway signs, etc. are not displayed. Speed limits with extra text characters are always displayed.

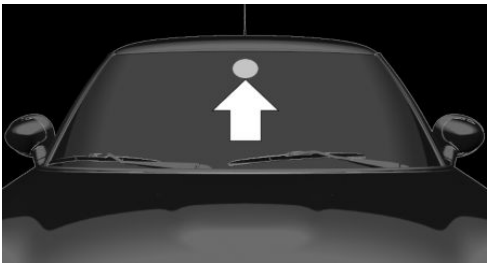
Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◄

Overview

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Display

Speed Limit Info is displayed via the Onboard Computer.

Press button on the turn signal lever several times, if needed.

Speed Limit Info is displayed on the Info Display in the instrument cluster.

Speed Limit Info

The last speed limit detected.

Without a navigation system the traffic signals are grayed out after curves or longer stretches of roadway.

With navigation system: Speed Limit Info is not available.

Without navigation system: no speed limit or cancellation is detected.

Speed Limit Info can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

System limits

The system may not be fully functional and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- ▷ When signs are fully or partially concealed by objects, stickers or paint.
- ▷ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- ▷ When driving toward bright lights or strong reflections.
- ▷ When the windshield in front of the interior mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered by a sticker, etc.
- ▷ In the event of incorrect detection by the camera.
- ▷ If the speed limits stored in the navigation system are incorrect.
- ▷ In areas not covered by the navigation system.
- ▷ When roads differ from the navigation, such as due to changes in road routing.
- ▷ When passing buses or trucks with a speed sticker.
- ▷ If the traffic signs are non-conforming.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▷ When signs that are valid for a parallel road are detected.

SELECTION LISTS

General information

With the buttons on the steering wheel and the display in the instrument cluster the following can be displayed or operated:

- ▷ Current audio source.
- ▷ Redial phone feature.
- ▷ Turn on voice activation system.

Activating a list and adjusting the setting

Button on the steering wheel	Function
⇧	Move selection up.
⇩	Move selection down.
OK	Confirm the selection.

Display

ONBOARD COMPUTER

Concept

The Onboard Computer displays different vehicle data in the instrument cluster, such as average values.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

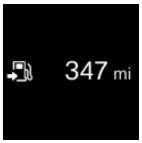
Calling up information on the Info Display

Press and hold button on signal lever.

Information is displayed in the Info Display of the instrument cluster.

Information at a glance

Info Display



Repeatedly pressing the button on the turn signal lever calls up the following information in the Info Display:

- ▷ Range.
- ▷ GREEN Info.

  When GREEN Mode is activated.
- ▷ Average consumption, fuel.
- ▷ Current consumption, fuel.
- ▷ Average speed.
- ▷ Date.
- ▷ Engine temperature display.
- ▷ With equipment version with Head-up Display and navigation:

  Distance to destination.

  When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.
- ▷ With equipment version with Head-up Display and navigation:

  Time of arrival.

  When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.
- ▷ Speed Limit Info.
- ▷ Speed.

The unit of some information can be changed.

Setting units, refer to page 33.

Selecting information

You can select what information from the On-board Computer is to be displayed on the Info Display of the instrument cluster.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. Select the desired information.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Information in detail

Range

Displays the estimated cruising range available with the remaining fuel.

The range is calculated based on your driving style over the last 20 miles/30 km.

GREEN info

The achieved range extension may be displayed as a bonus range.

Average fuel consumption

This is calculated for the period while the engine is running.

The average fuel consumption is calculated for the distance traveled since the last reset by the Onboard Computer.

Average speed

Periods in which the vehicle is parked with the engine manually stopped are not included in the calculation of the average speed.

Resetting average values

Press and hold button on turn signal lever.

Engine temperature display

Displays the current engine temperature, based on a combination of coolant and engine oil temperature. As soon as the optimum operating temperature has been attained, the indicator is in the center position.

If the engine oil or coolant, and thus the engine, become too hot, a Check Control message is displayed too.

When the engine temperature is too high, a red indicator light is displayed.

When the engine oil temperature is too high, a red indicator light is displayed.

Check the coolant level, refer to page 247.

With equipment version with Head-up Display and navigation: distance to destination

The distance remaining to the destination is displayed if a destination is entered in the navigation system before the trip is started.

The distance to the destination is adopted automatically.

With equipment version with Head-up Display and navigation: time of arrival

The estimated time of arrival is displayed if a destination is entered in the navigation system before the trip is started.

The time must be correctly set.

Speed Limit Info

Speed Limit Info shows the current maximum permitted speed in the instrument cluster.

Onboard Computer on the Control Display

Concept

The Onboard Computer displays different vehicle data on the Control Display, such as average values.

General information

Two types of Onboard Computers are available on the Control Display:

- ▷ "Onboard info": average values, such as the fuel consumption, are displayed. The values can be reset individually.
- ▷ "Trip computer": the values deliver an overview of a certain distance and can be reset as often as necessary.

Calling up the Onboard Computer or trip computer

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Onboard info" or "Trip computer"

Resetting the Onboard Computer

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Onboard info"
4. "Consumption" or "Speed"
5. "OK"

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

Resetting the trip computer

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip computer"
4. Move the Controller to the left, if needed.
   - ▷ "Reset": all values are reset.
   - ▷ "Automatic reset": all values are reset approx. 4 hours after the vehicle has come to a standstill.
5. If necessary, "OK"

DRIVING EXCITEMENT

Concept

On the Control Display, sport instruments can be displayed, and the vehicle state can be checked before the use of the SPORT program.

Sport instruments

General information

On the Control Display, values for power and torque are displayed.

Displaying sport instruments

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "Sport displays"
4. "Sports instruments"

Via MINI Driving Modes switch:

1. Activate SPORT.
2. "Sport displays"
3. "Sports instruments"

Vehicle state

The following vehicle and surrounding area data is automatically checked and evaluated in succession:

- ▷ Range.
- ▷ Engine temperature.
- ▷ External temperature.
- ▷ SPORT program state.

Finally, a total evaluation of the vehicle state is displayed.

Checking vehicle state

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "Sport displays"
4. "Vehicle and surroundings"

Via the MINI Driving Modes switch:

1. Activate SPORT.
2. "Sport displays"
3. "Vehicle and surroundings"

SPEED WARNING

Concept

A speed limit can be set that when reached will cause a warning to be issued.

General information

The warning is repeated if the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed limit again, after it has dropped below it by 3 mph/5 km/h.

Displaying, setting or changing the speed warning

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"

3. "Speed warning"
4. "Warning at:"
5. Turn the Controller until the desired speed is displayed.
6. Press the Controller.

Activating/deactivating the speed warning

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Speed warning"
4. "Speed warning"
5. Press the Controller.

Setting your current speed as the speed warning

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Speed warning"
4. "Select current speed"
5. Press the Controller.

LED RING ON THE CENTRAL INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Concept

The LED ring displays light animations to represent specific functions.

Basic displays

Basic functions, for instance the tachometer, can be set to be displayed continually if so desired.

Event displays

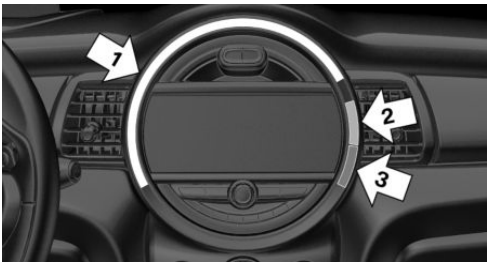
Functions that are only displayed temporarily, for instance the volume or temperature settings, can be set as event displays.

Several vehicle assistance functions can also be displayed on the LED ring. This display corresponds with the displays of the function in the respective display.

Example: tachometer

Like the tachometer in the instrument cluster, the light animations of the tachometer's basic display show the current RPMs and the respective RPM warning thresholds.

Display



▷ Arrow 1: current RPM.

▷ Arrow 2: prewarning field.

▷ Arrow 3: warning field.

Switching on/off LED ring

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Center Instrument"
5. "Center Instrument"

Adjusting the LED ring

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

3. "Displays"
4. "Center Instrument"
5. "Basic display" or "Event display"
6. Select the desired setting.

Setting the brightness

The brightness can be adjusted when night lighting is active in the instrument cluster.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Center Instrument"
5. "Brightness at night"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is set.
7. Press the Controller.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

HEAD-UP DISPLAY

Concept

This system projects important information into the driver's field of vision, for instance the speed.

The driver can get information without averting his or her eyes from the road.

General information

Follow the instructions for cleaning the Head-up Display. For additional information, see the chapter on care.

Safety information

WARNING

When extending and retracting the projection screen of the Head-up Display, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury.

Make sure that the area of movement of the projection screen is clear during opening and closing.◂

NOTE

The Head-up Display consists of sensitive components that can easily be scraped or damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not place any objects on the Head-up Display, attach to system components or plug into the system. Do not move the moving parts manually.◂

Overview

Switching the Head-up Display on/off

When switching on, the projection lens of the Head-up Display is extended. When switching off, the projection lens of the Head-up Display is retracted again.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-Up Display"
5. "Head-Up Display"

Display

Overview

The following information is displayed on the Head-up Display:

▷ Speed.

- ▷ Navigation system.
- ▷ Check Control messages.
- ▷ Selection list from the instrument cluster.
- ▷ Driver assistance systems.

Some of this information is only displayed briefly as needed.

Selecting displays in the Head-up Display

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-Up Display"
5. "Displayed information"
6. Select the desired displays in the Head-up Display.

Settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the brightness

The brightness is automatically adjusted to the ambient brightness.

The basic setting can be adjusted manually.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-Up Display"
5. "Brightness"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is set.
7. Press the Controller.

When the low beams are switched on, the brightness of the Head-up Display can be additionally influenced using the instrument lighting, refer to page 131.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Adjusting the height

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-Up Display"
5. "Height"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired height is reached.
7. Press the Controller.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

The height of the Head-up Display can also be stored using the memory function, refer to page 79.

Setting the rotation

The screen of the Head-up Display can be rotated around its own axis.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-Up Display"
5. "Rotation"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is selected.
7. Press the Controller.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Display visibility

The visibility of the displays in the Head-up Display is influenced by the following factors:

- ▷ Certain sitting positions.
- ▷ Objects on the cover of the Head-up Display.
- ▷ Sunglasses with certain polarization filters.
- ▷ Wet roads.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

▷ Unfavorable light conditions.

John Cooper Works: sport displays in the Head-up Display

General information

The sport displays in the Head-up Display assist with a sporty driving style.

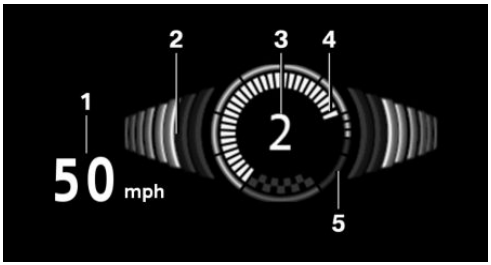
Switching on

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-Up Display"
5. "Displayed information"
6. "Sport displays"

With navigation system: if the sport displays are switched on, no navigation content will be displayed on the Head-up Display.

Display



1 Speed

2 Shift point indicator

3 Gear display

4 Current engine speed

5 Warning field, speed

Shift point indicator

Concept

Shift point indicator in the Head-up Display indicates the optimum shifting point. Thus, with a sporty driving style, the best possible vehicle acceleration is achieved.

Functional requirements

▷ Steptronic Sport transmission:

Manual mode M/S and, if necessary, Dynamic Traction Control DTC are activated.

▷ Press the accelerator pedal all the way down.

Display

Successive gray illuminated fields indicate the upcoming shift moment.

Shift up immediately when the red fields light up.

When the permitted maximum speed is reached, all shift point indicators flash.

When the maximum speed is exceeded, the supply of fuel is interrupted in order to protect the engine.

COUNTRY TIMER

Concept

The system provides information on how long and to what degree the vehicle was driven on inclined, uneven, unpaved or snow-covered roads, for example.

General information

The system consists of the following two menus:

▷ Country Timer: display of the gradient and unevenness of the routes traveled.

▷ Country Timer Info: display of the best time and total time since the last reset.

Follow the notes on traveling on poor roads, refer to page 207.

Opening the menu

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "MINI Country Timer"
3. Select the desired setting.
   - ▷ : display of the Country Timer.
   - ▷ : display of the Country Timer Info.

Display of the Country Timer

Overview

- ▷ Symbols for road gradient and unevenness, arrow 1.
- ▷ Category, arrow 2.
- ▷ Pulse value, arrow 3.

Symbols, pulse deflection and pulse value

When the vehicle is being driven on inclined or uneven roads, the corresponding symbol lights up, arrow 1. One or more pulse deflections are displayed and the pulse value increases, arrow 3.

Categories

As the pulse value increases, the vehicle becomes larger and reaches various levels, arrow 2.

Display of the Country Timer Info

Best time

The shortest driving time necessary to reach the highest level.

Total time

The total driving time that the vehicle was driven at the highest level.

Resetting the Country Timer Info

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "MINI Country Timer"
3. "MINI Country Timer Info"
4. Select the desired setting.
   - ▷ "Reset record time and display": resetting the best time.
   - ▷ "Reset total time": resetting the total time.

VEHICLE STATUS

General information

The status can be displayed and actions performed for several systems.

Opening the vehicle status

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle status"

Information at a glance

- ▷ "Flat Tire Monitor": Status of the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 142.
- ▷ "Tire Pressure Monitor": Status of the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 137.
- ▷ "Engine oil level": Electronic engine oil level check, refer to page 243.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

- ⚠ "Check Control": Check Control messages are stored in the background and can be displayed on the Control Display. Displaying stored Check Control messages, refer to page 113.
- "Service required": Displaying service requirements, refer to page 115.

LIGHTS

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

OVERVIEW

Switches in the vehicle

The light switch element is located next to the steering wheel.

Symbol	Function
	Rear fog light.
	Front fog lights.
	Automatic headlight control. Cornering light.
0	Lights off. Daytime running lights.
	Parking lights.
	Low beams.
	Instrument lighting.

PARKING LIGHTS, LOW BEAMS AND ROADSIDE PARKING LIGHTS

General information

Position of switch: 0 , ,

If the driver's door is opened when the ignition is switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off.

Parking lights

Position of switch:

The vehicle is illuminated on all sides.

Do not use the parking lights for extended periods; otherwise, the battery may become discharged and it would then be impossible to start the engine.

Canada: when parking, switch on the one-sided roadside parking light, refer to page 129.

Low beams

Position of switch:

The low beams light up when the ignition is switched on.

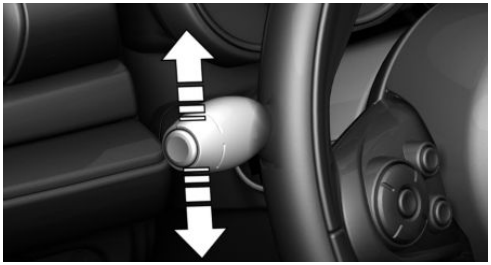
Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

Canada: roadside parking light

Concept

The vehicle can be illuminated on one side.

Switching on



With radio-ready state switched off, press the lever either up or down past the resistance point for approx. 2 seconds.

Switching off

Briefly press the lever to the resistance point in the opposite direction.

WELCOME LIGHTS AND HEADLIGHT COURTESY DELAY FEATURE

Welcome lights

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment and the ambient brightness, individual light functions may be switched on briefly when the vehicle is unlocked.

Activating/deactivating

Position of switch: ,

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Exterior lighting"
5. "Welcome lights"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Headlight courtesy delay feature

General information

The low beams stay illuminated for a particular time if the high beams are switched on after radio-ready state is switched off.

Canada: the low beams stay illuminated for a particular time if the headlight flasher is switched on after radio-ready state is switched off.

Setting the duration

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Exterior lighting"
5. "Pathway lighting"
6. Set length of time.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

AUTOMATIC HEADLIGHT CONTROL

Concept

The low beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness, for instance in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation.

General information

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

Activating

Position of switch:

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

System limits

The automatic headlight control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment of lighting conditions.

For example, the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. To avoid safety risks under these conditions, you should always switch on the lights manually.

DAYTIME RUNNING LIGHTS

General information

Position of switch: 0 , , .

The daytime running lights light up when the ignition is switched on. After the ignition is switched off, the parking lights light up in position .

Activating/deactivating

In some countries, daytime running lights are mandatory, so it may not be possible to deactivate the daytime running lights.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Exterior lighting"
5. Select the desired setting.

Settings are stored for the remote control currently used.

CORNERING LIGHT

General information

Position of switch:

In tight curves, for instance on mountainous roads or when turning, an additional, cornering light is switched on that lights up the inside of the curve when the vehicle is moving below a certain speed.

The cornering light is automatically switched on depending on the steering angle or the use of turn signals.

ADAPTIVE HEADLIGHT RANGE CONTROL

The adaptive headlight range control compensates for acceleration and braking operations in order not to blind the oncoming traffic and to achieve optimum illumination of the roadway.

HIGH-BEAM ASSISTANT

Concept

The high-beam Assistant detects other traffic participants early on and automatically switches the high beams on or off depending on the traffic situation.

General information

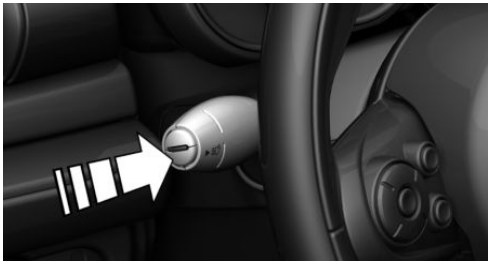
The assistant ensures that the high beams are switched on, whenever the traffic situation allows. In the low speed range, the high beams are not switched on by the system.

The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to adequate illumination, for instance in towns and cities.

The high beams can be switched on and off at any time as usual.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

Activating/deactivating



Position of switch, depending on the vehicle equipment: ,

Press and hold button on signal lever.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

The headlights are automatically switched between low beams and high beams.

The blue indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up when the system switches on the high beams.

The high-beam Assistant is deactivated when manually switching the high beams on and off, refer to page 95.

To reactivate the high-beam Assistant, press the button on the turn signal lever.

System limits

The high-beam Assistant cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high beams. In situation that require this, therefore switch off manually.

The system is not fully functional in the following situations, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- ▷ In very unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- ▷ When detecting poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; and at animal crossings.
- ▷ In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in cross traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on highways.
- ▷ In poorly-lit towns and cities and in the presence of highly reflective signs.
- ▷ When the windshield in front of the interior mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

FOG LIGHTS

Front fog lights

Concept

The front fog lights work alongside the low beams to illuminate a wider area of the roadway.

Functional requirement

The low beams must be switched on before switching on the front fog lights.

Switching on/off

Press button.

The green indicator light lights up if the front fog lights are switched on.

If the automatic headlight control, refer to page 129, is activated, the low beams will come on automatically when you switch on the front fog lights.

When the high beams or headlight flasher are activated, the front fog lights are not switched on.

INSTRUMENT LIGHTING

Functional requirement

The parking lights or low beams must be switched on to adjust the brightness.

Settings

Adjust the brightness with the thumbwheel.

INTERIOR LIGHTS

General information

Depending on the equipment, the interior lights, footwell lights, entry lights, and courtesy lights are controlled automatically.

Thumbwheel for the instrument lighting controls brightness of some of these features.

Overview

1 Interior lights
2 Reading lights
3 Ambient light

Switching the interior lights on/off

Press button.

To switch off permanently: press the button and hold for approx. 3 seconds.

Switching the reading lights on and off manually

Press button.

The reading lights are located in the front next to the interior light.

Ambient light

General information

Depending on the equipment version, lighting can be adjusted for some lights in the car's interior.

Activating/deactivating

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Interior lighting"
5. "Ambient lighting"
6. Select the desired setting.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Changing color

Push the switch forward or back: manual color change.

Press the switch forward or backward and hold for approx. 3 seconds, until the ambient light illuminates several times: automatic color change. Push the switch again to end color changes.

Setting the brightness

Depending on the equipment, the brightness of the ambient light can be adjusted via the thumbwheel for the instrument lighting or on the Control Display.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lighting"

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

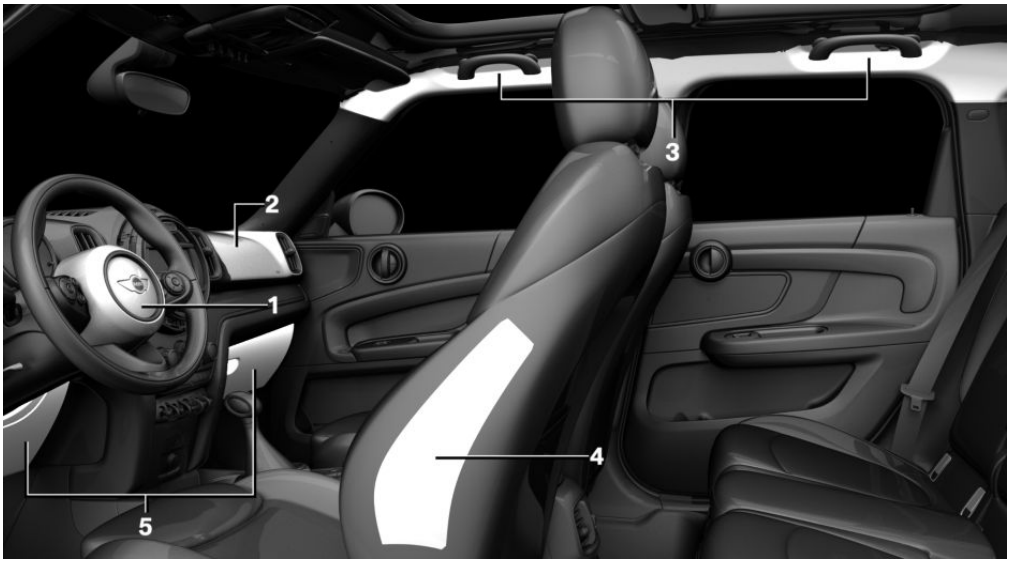
4. "Interior lighting"
5. "Brightness"
6. Adjust the brightness.

SAFETY

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

AIRBAGS



1 Front airbag, driver
2 Front airbag, front passenger
3 Head airbag
4 Side airbag
5 Knee airbag

Front airbags

Front airbags help protect the driver and the front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone would not provide adequate protection.

Side airbag

In a lateral impact, the side airbag supports the side of the body in the chest and lap area.

Head airbag

In a lateral impact, the head airbag supports the head.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

Ejection Mitigation

The head airbag system is designed as an ejection mitigation countermeasure to reduce the likelihood of ejections of vehicle occupants through side windows during rollovers or side impact events.

Knee airbag

The knee airbag supports the legs in a frontal impact.

Protective action

Airbags are not triggered in every impact situation, for instance in less severe accidents or rear-end collisions.

Information on optimum effect of the airbags

WARNING

If the seat position is incorrect or the deployment area of the airbags is impaired, the airbag system cannot provide protection as intended and may cause additional injuries due to triggering. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Follow the information on achieving the optimum protective effect of the airbag system.◀

- ▷ Keep a distance from the airbags.
- ▷ Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim. Hold your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions, to keep the risk of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible when the airbag is triggered.
- ▷ Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., keeps his or her feet and legs in the floor area and does not support them on the dashboard.
- ▷ Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag.
- ▷ There should be no additional persons, animals or objects between an airbag and a person.
- ▷ Dashboard and windshield on the front passenger side must stay clear - do not attach adhesive labels or coverings and do not attach brackets or cables, for instance for GPS devices or mobile phones.
- ▷ Do not apply adhesive materials to the airbag cover panels, do not cover them or modify them in any way.
- ▷ Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area.
- ▷ Do not place slip covers, seat cushions or other objects on the front passenger seat that are not specifically suited for seats with integrated side airbags.
- ▷ Do not place seat cushions or other objects on the front seats that are not specifically suited for seats with integrated side airbags.
- ▷ Do not hang pieces of clothing, such as jackets, over the backrests.
- ▷ Never modify either the individual components or the wiring in the airbag system. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the dashboard, and the seats.
- ▷ Do not remove the airbag system.

Even when you follow all instructions very closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be fully ruled out in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive occupants.

Vehicle modifications for a person with disabilities may affect the air bag system; contact MINI Customer Relations for further information.

Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

Functional readiness of the airbag system

Safety information

WARNING

Individual components can be hot after triggering of the airbag system. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch individual components.◂

WARNING

Improperly executed work can lead to failure, malfunction or unintentional triggering of the airbag system. In the case of a malfunction, the airbag system might not trigger as intended despite the accident severity. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Have the airbag system checked, repaired, dismantled and scrapped by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◂

Correct function

When the ignition is switched on, the warning light in the instrument cluster lights up briefly and thereby indicates the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the belt tensioner.

Airbag system malfunctioning

- ▷ Warning light does not come on when the ignition is switched on.
- ▷ The warning light lights up continuously.

Automatic deactivation of the front-seat passenger airbags

Concept

The system reads if the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the human body's resistance.

Front, knee, and side airbag on the front passenger's side are activated or deactivated.

General information

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, refer to the safety information and instructions for children on the front passenger seat, see Children.

Safety information

WARNING

To ensure the front-seat passenger airbag function, the system must be able to detect whether a person is sitting in the front passenger seat. The entire seat cushion area must be used for this purpose. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the floor area.◂

Malfunction of the automatic deactivation system

When transporting older children and adults, the front-seat passenger airbags may be deactivated in certain sitting positions. In this case, the indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up.

In this case, change the sitting position so that the front-seat passenger airbags are activated and the indicator light goes out.

If it is not possible to activate the airbags, have the person sit in the rear.

To enable correct recognition of the occupied seat cushion.

- ▷ Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically determined to be safe for use on the front passenger seat.
- ▷ Do not place any electronic devices on the front passenger seat if a child restraint system is to be installed on it.
- ▷ Do not place objects under the seat that could press against the seat from below.
- ▷ No moisture in or on the seat.

Indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags

The indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags indicates the operating state of the front-seat passenger airbags.

The light indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.

▷ The indicator light lights up when a child is properly seated in a child restraint system or when the seat is empty. The airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.

▷ The indicator light does not light up when, for instance a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbags on the front passenger side are activated.

Detected child restraint systems

The system generally detects children seated in a child restraint system, particularly in child restraint systems required by NHTSA at the point in time when the vehicle was manufactured. After installing a child restraint system, make sure that the indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up. This indicates that the child restraint system has been detected and the front-seat passenger airbags are not activated.

Strength of the driver's and front-seat passenger airbag

The explosive power that activates driver's/front-seat passenger airbags very much depends on the positions of the driver's/front passenger seat.

To maintain the accuracy of this function over the long-term, calibrate the front seats as soon as a relevant Check Control message is displayed. A message also appears on the Control Display.

Calibrating the front seats

WARNING

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.◀

An appropriate Check Control message is displayed.

1. Move the respective seat all the way forward.
2. Move the respective seat forward again. The seat moves forward briefly.
3. Readjust the seat to the desired position.

The calibration procedure is completed when the Check Control message disappears.

If the message continues to be displayed, repeat the calibration.

If the message does not disappear after a repeat calibration, have the system checked as soon as possible.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR TPM

Concept

The system monitors tire inflation pressure in the four mounted tires. The system warns you if

there is a significant loss of pressure in one or more tires.

General information

Sensors in the tire valves measure the tire inflation pressure and, depending on the model, the tire temperature.

With use of the system follow further information found under Tire inflation pressure, refer to page 222.

Functional requirements

The following conditions must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable flagging of a loss of tire inflation pressure is not assured:

- After a tire or wheel replacement, a reset was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
- After the tire inflation pressure was adjusted to a new value, a reset was performed.
- Wheels with TPM wheel electronics.

Status display

Current status

The system status can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the system is active.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"

The current status is displayed.

Tire conditions

General information

Tire and system status are indicated by the color of the wheels and a SMS text message on the Control Display.

All wheels green

System is active and will issue a warning related to the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

One to four yellow wheels

A flat tire or major drop in the tire inflation pressure has occurred in the indicated tires.

Gray wheels

It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

Possible causes:

- Malfunction.
- The system is being reset.

Additonal information

The status control display additionally shows the current tire inflation pressures. It shows the actual values read; they may vary depending on driving style or weather conditions.

Resetting the system

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. Start the engine but do not drive off.
5. Reset the tire inflation pressure using "Perform reset".
6. Drive away.

The wheels are displayed in gray and the following is displayed "Resetting Tire Pressure Monitor…".

After driving faster than 19 mph/30 km/h for a short period, the set tire inflation pressures are accepted as reference values. The resetting process is completed automatically while driving. After successful completion of the reset, the tires appear in green on the Control Display and "Tire Pressure Monitor active. See label for recommended pressures." is displayed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

You may interrupt this trip at any time. When you continue the reset resumes automatically.

Messages

General information

A low tire inflation pressure may cause the DSC Dynamic Stability Control to be switched on.

Safety information

WARNING

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of an accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.◀

If a tire inflation pressure check is required

Message

A symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset was done. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset. Inflation was not carried out according to specifications.
	The tire inflation pressure has fallen below the level of the last reset.

Measure

1. Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.
2. Reset the system.

If the tire inflation pressure is too low

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a tire inflation pressure loss. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and drive moderately. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance gas station, check and correct the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, if necessary.
3. Reset the system.

If there is a significant loss of tire inflation pressure

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with normal tires or run-flat tires.

   Run-flat tires, refer to page 230, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Normal tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   To do this, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure gage of a flat tire kit.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been reset. In this case, perform the reset.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

   If identification of flat tire damage is not possible, please contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
2. Repair the flat tire, e.g., with a flat tire kit or by changing the wheel.

Use of sealant, for instance from the flat tire kit, may damage the TPM wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked and replaced at the next opportunity.

Run-flat tires

Safety information

WARNING

Your vehicle handles differently with a run-flat with no or low inflation pressure; for instance, your lane stability when braking is reduced, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of an accident.

Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.◀

Maximum speed

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

Continued driving with a flat tire

If continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been reset. In this case, perform the reset.

Possible driving range with a depressurized tire

The possible driving range varies depending on the how the vehicle is loaded and used, e.g., speed, road conditions, external temperature. The driving range may be less but may also be more if an economical driving style is used.

If the vehicle is loaded with an average weight and used under favorable conditions, its possible driving range will be up to 50 miles/80 km.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

Vehicle handling with damaged tires

Vehicles driven with a damaged tire will handle differently, potentially leading to conditions such as the following:

- ▷ Greater likelihood of swerving off course.
- ▷ Longer braking distances.
- ▷ Changed self-steering properties.

Modify your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, for instance curbs or potholes.

Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

System limits

Temperature

The tire inflation pressure depends on the tire's temperature.

Driving or exposure to the sun will increase the tire's temperature, thus increasing the tire inflation pressure.

The tire inflation pressure is reduced when the tire temperature falls again.

These circumstances may cause a warning when temperatures fall very sharply.

Sudden tire pressure loss

The system cannot indicate sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances.

Failure to perform a reset

The system does not function properly if a reset has not been carried out, for instance a flat tire is reported though tire inflation pressures are correct.

Malfunction

The yellow warning light flashes and is then illuminated continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

Examples and recommendations in the following situations:

- ▷ A wheel without TPM wheel electronics, for instance an emergency wheel, is mounted: have it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.
- ▷ Malfunction: have system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- ▷ The system was unable to complete the reset. Perform a system reset again.
- ▷ Interference caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.

Declaration according to NHTSA/FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving

on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

FTM FLAT TIRE MONITOR

Concept

The system detects tire inflation pressure loss on the basis of rotation speed differences between the individual wheels while driving.

In the event of a tire inflation pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel changes. The difference will be detected and reported as a flat tire.

The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires.

Functional requirements

The following conditions must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable flagging of a loss of tire inflation pressure is not assured:

- ▷ After a tire or wheel replacement, an initialization was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
- ▷ After the tire inflation pressure was adjusted to a new value, an initialization was performed.

Status display

The current status of the flat tire monitor can be displayed, for instance whether the RPA is active.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tire Monitor"

The status is displayed.

Initialization required

An initialization must be performed in the following situations:

- ▷ After the tire inflation pressure has been adjusted.
- ▷ After a tire or wheel replacement.

Performing initialization

When initializing, the set tire inflation pressures serve as reference values in order to detect a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the tire inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tire Monitor"
4. Start the engine but do not drive off.

5. Start the initialization with: "Perform reset".
6. Drive away.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

The initialization automatically continues when driving resumes.

Messages

General information

When a flat tire is indicated, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if needed.

Safety information

WARNING

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of an accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.◂

Indication of a flat tire

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with normal tires or run-flat tires.

   Run-flat tires, refer to page 230, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Normal tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   To do this, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure gage of a flat tire kit.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been reset. In this case, perform the reset.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

   If identification of flat tire damage is not possible, please contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
2. Repair the flat tire, e.g., with a flat tire kit or by changing the wheel.

Use of sealant, for instance from the flat tire kit, may damage the TPM wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked and replaced at the next opportunity.

Run-flat tires

Safety information

WARNING

Your vehicle handles differently with a run-flat with no or low inflation pressure; for instance, your lane stability when braking is reduced, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of an accident.

Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.◂

Maximum speed

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

Continued driving with a flat tire

If continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

Possible driving range with a depressurized tire

The possible driving range varies depending on the how the vehicle is loaded and used, e.g., speed, road conditions, external temperature. The driving range may be less but may also be more if an economical driving style is used.

If the vehicle is loaded with an average weight and used under favorable conditions, its possible driving range will be up to 50 miles/80 km.

Vehicle handling with damaged tires

Vehicles driven with a damaged tire will handle differently, potentially leading to conditions such as the following:

- ▷ Greater likelihood of swerving off course.
- ▷ Longer braking distances.
- ▷ Changed self-steering properties.

Modify your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, for instance curbs or potholes.

Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

System limits

The system could be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:

- ▷ A natural, even tire inflation pressure loss in all four tires will not be recognized. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.
- ▷ Sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances cannot be recognized in advance.
- ▷ When the system has not been initialized.
- ▷ When driving on a snowy or slippery road surface.
- ▷ Sporty driving style: spinning traction wheels, high lateral acceleration (drifting).
- ▷ When driving with snow chains.

INTELLIGENT SAFETY

Concept

Intelligent Safety enables central operation of the driver assistance system.

The intelligent safety systems can help prevent an imminent collision.

- ▷ Approach control warning with City light braking function, refer to page 145.
- ▷ Person warning with City light braking function, refer to page 148.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

WARNING

Indicators and warnings do not relieve from personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late, incorrectly, or without justification. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

WARNING

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.◀

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety button

Switching on/off

Some Intelligent Safety systems are automatically active after every departure. Some Intelligent Safety systems activate according to the last setting.

Press button briefly:

- ▷ The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.
- ▷ LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings.

Adjust as needed. The individual settings are stored for the driver profile currently in use.

Press button again:

- ▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.
- ▷ The LED lights up green.

Hold down button:

- ▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.
- ▷ The LED goes out.

APPROACH CONTROL WARNING WITH CITY LIGHT BRAKING FUNCTION

Concept

The system can help prevent accidents. If an accident cannot be prevented, the system will help reduce the collision speed.

The system sounds a warning before an imminent collision and activates brakes independently, if needed.

The automatic braking intervention is done with limited force and duration.

A camera at the base of the interior mirror controls the system.

The approach control warning is available even if cruise control has been deactivated.

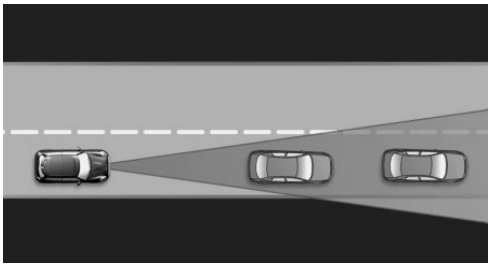
With the vehicle approaching another vehicle intentionally, the approach control warning and braking are delayed in order to avoid false system reactions.

General information

The system warns at two levels of an imminent danger of collision at speeds from approx. 3 mph/5 km/h. Time of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

Appropriate braking kicks in at speeds of up to 35 mph/60 km/h.

Detection range



Objects that the system can detect are taken into account.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

WARNING

Indicators and warnings do not relieve from personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late, incorrectly, or without justification. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

WARNING

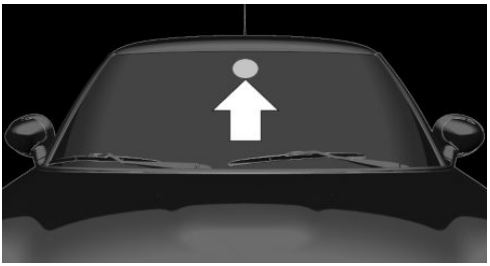
Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.◀

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety button

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active after every driving off.

Switching on/off manually

Press button briefly:

▷ The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.

▷ LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings.

Adjust as needed. The individual settings are stored for the driver profile currently in use.

Press button again:

▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.

▷ The LED lights up green.

Hold down button:

▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

▷ The LED goes out.

Setting the warning time

The warning time can be set via the Central Information Display (CID).

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Intelligent Safety"
4. "Warning time"
5. Select the desired setting.

The selected warning time is stored for the driver profile currently in use.

Warning with braking function

Display

A warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display if a collision with a detected vehicle is imminent.

Symbol	Measure
	Symbol lights up red: prewarning. Brake and increase distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Prewarning

This warning is issued, for instance when there is the impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

The driver must intervene actively when there is a prewarning.

Acute warning with braking function

Acute warning is displayed in case of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another object at a high differential speed.

The driver must intervene actively when there is an acute warning. If necessary, the driver is assisted by a minor automatic braking intervention in a possible risk of collision.

Acute warnings can also be triggered without previous forewarning.

Braking intervention

The warning prompts the driver to react. During a warning, the maximum braking force is used. Prerequisite for the brake booster is sufficiently quick and sufficiently hard stepping on the brake pedal. If there is a risk of collision, the system may assist with braking.When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.

Manual transmission: during a braking intervention up to a complete stop, the engine may be shut down.

The braking intervention occurs only if vehicle stability has not been restricted, for instance by deactivating the DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

The driver may cancel the braking intervention by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection can be restricted. Follow the limitations of the detection range and functional restrictions.

System limits

Safety information

WARNING

The system can react not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to the system limits. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Follow the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.◀

Detection range

The system's detection potential is limited.

Thus, a system reaction might not come or might come late.

E.g., the following situations may not be detected:

- ▷ Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- ▷ Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- ▷ Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- ▷ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- ▷ In tight curves.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the windshield are dirty or covered.
- ▷ If the driving stability control systems are deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▷ If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.

Warning sensitivity

The more sensitive the warning settings are, the more warnings are displayed. Therefore, there may also be an excess of premature or unjustified warnings and reactions.

PERSON WARNING WITH CITY LIGHT BRAKING FUNCTION

Concept

The system can help prevent accidents with pedestrians.

When driving at city speeds, the system will issue a warning if there is imminent risk of a collision with pedestrians, and support this with a light braking function.

The camera at the base of the interior mirror controls the system.

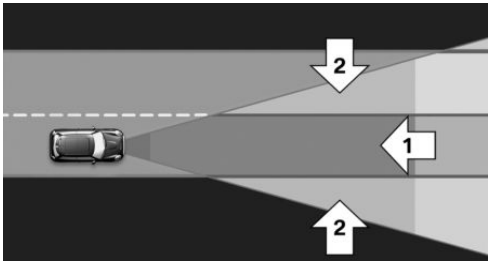
General information

With sufficient brightness, the system warns about possible collision danger with pedestrians starting at approx. 6 mph/10 km/h to approx. 35 mph/60 km/h and assists with braking before a collision.

The system reacts to people who are within the detection range of the system.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

Detection range



The detection area in front of the vehicle is divided into two areas:

- ▷ Central area, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- ▷ Expanded area, arrow 2, to the right and left of the central area.

A collision is imminent if pedestrians are located within the central area. A warning is issued about pedestrians who are located within the extended area only if they are moving in the direction of the central area.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

WARNING

Indicators and warnings do not relieve from personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late, incorrectly, or without justification. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

WARNING

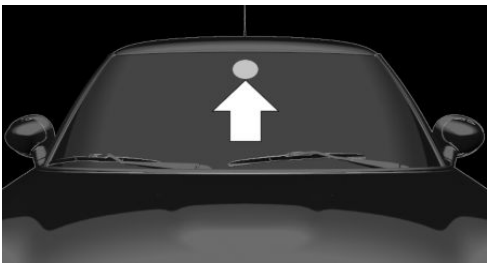
Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.◀

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety button

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active after every driving off.

Switching on/off manually

Press button briefly:

- ▷ The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.

- ▷ LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings.

Adjust as needed. The individual settings are stored for the driver profile currently in use.

Press button again:

- ▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are switched on.

- ▷ The LED lights up green.

Hold down button:

- ▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

- ▷ The LED goes out.

Warning with braking function

Display

If a collision with a person detected in this way is imminent, a warning symbol appears on the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.

The red symbol is displayed and a signal sounds.

Intervene immediately by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Braking intervention

The warning prompts the driver to react. During a warning, the maximum braking force is used. Prerequisite for the brake booster is sufficiently quick and sufficiently hard stepping on the brake pedal. If there is a risk of collision, the system may assist with braking.When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.

Manual transmission: during a braking intervention up to a complete stop, the engine may be shut down.

The braking intervention occurs only if vehicle stability has not been restricted, for instance by deactivating the DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

The driver may cancel the braking intervention by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection can be restricted. Follow the limitations of the detection range and functional restrictions.

System limits

Safety information

WARNING

The system can react not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to the system limits. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Follow the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.◀

Detection range

The detection potential of the camera is limited.

Thus, a warning might not be issued or be issued late.

E.g., the following situations may not be detected:

- ▷ Partially covered pedestrians.
- ▷ Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of the viewing angle or contour.
- ▷ Pedestrians outside of the detection range.
- ▷ Pedestrians having a body size less than 32 in/80 cm.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.

- In tight curves.
- If the field of view of the camera or the windshield are dirty or covered.
- If the driving stability control systems are deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
- When it is dark outside.

BRAKE FORCE DISPLAY

Concept

Additional brake lights indicate emergency braking to the traffic behind. This can reduce the risk of a rear-end collision.

General information

- During normal brake application, the brake lights light up.
- During heavy brake application, the flashers additionally light up.

ALERTNESS ASSISTANT

Concept

The system can detect decreasing alertness or fatigue of the driver during long, monotonous trips, for instance on highways. In this situation, it is recommended that the driver takes a break.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess one's physical state. An increasing lack of alertness or fatigue may not be detected or not be detected in time. There is a risk of an accident. Make sure that the driver is rested and alert. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions.◀

Function

The system is switched on each time the engine is started and cannot be switched off.

After travel has begun, the system monitors certain aspects of the driver's behavior, so that decreasing alertness or fatigue can be detected.

This procedure takes the following criteria into account:

- Personal driving style, for instance steering behavior.
- Driving conditions, for instance length of trip.

Starting at approximately 43 mph/70 km/h, the system is active and can display a recommendation to take a break.

Break recommendation

If the driver becomes less alert or fatigued, a message is displayed in the Control Display with the recommendation to take a break.

A recommendation to take a break is displayed only once during an uninterrupted trip.

After a break, another recommendation to take a break cannot be displayed until after approximately 45 minutes.

System limits

The function may be limited in the following situations, for instance and will either output an incorrect warning or no warning at all:

- When the clock is set incorrectly.
- When the vehicle speed is mainly below about 43 mph/70 km/h.
- With a sporty driving style, such as during rapid acceleration or when cornering fast.
- In active driving situations, such as when changing lanes frequently.
- When the road surface is poor.
- In the event of strong side winds.

The system is reset approx. 45 minutes after parking the vehicle, for instance in the case of a break during longer trips on highways.

POSTCRASH – IBRAKE

Concept

In the event of an accident, the system can bring the vehicle to a halt automatically without intervention by the driver in certain situations. This can reduce the risk of a further collision and the consequences thereof.

At standstill

After coming to a halt, the brake is released automatically. Secure the vehicle against rolling.

Harder vehicle braking

It can be necessary to bring the vehicle in certain situations to a halt quicker.

To do this, for a short time the braking pressure applied when stepping on the brake pedal must be higher than the braking pressure achieved by the automatic braking function. This interrupts automatic braking.

Interrupting automatic braking

It can be necessary to interrupt automatic braking in certain situations, for instance for an evasive maneuver.

Interrupt automatic braking:

- By pressing the brake pedal.
- By pressing the accelerator pedal.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

DRIVING STABILITY CONTROL SYSTEMS

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking.

The vehicle maintains its steering power even during full brake applications, thus increasing active safety.

ABS is operational every time you start the engine.

BRAKE ASSISTANT

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically produces the greatest possible braking force boost. It reduces the braking distance to a minimum during emergency stop. This system utilizes all of the benefits provided by the Antilock Brake System ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the emergency stop.

DSC DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL

Concept

Within the physical limits, the system helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing engine speed and by applying brakes to the individual wheels.

General information

DSC detects the following unstable driving conditions, for instance:

- ▷ Fishtailing, which can lead to oversteering.
- ▷ Loss of traction of the front wheels, which can lead to understeering.

Dynamic Traction Control DTC, refer to page 154, is a version of the DSC where forward momentum is optimized.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

WARNING

When driving with roof load, for instance with roof-mounted luggage rack, driving safety may not be ensured in driving-critical situations due to the elevated center of gravity. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Do not deactivate Dynamic Stability Control DSC when driving with roof load.◀

Indicator/warning lights

The indicator light flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces.

The indicator light lights up: DSC has malfunctioned.

Deactivating DSC: DSC OFF

General information

When DSC is deactivated, driving stability is reduced during acceleration and when driving in curves.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Deactivating DSC

Press and hold this button but not longer than approx. 10 seconds, until the indicator light for DSC OFF lights up in the instrument cluster and displays DSC OFF.

DSC is switched off.

Activating DSC

Press button.

DSC OFF and the DSC OFF indicator light go out.

Indicator/warning lights

When DSC is deactivated, DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster.

The indicator light lights up: DSC is deactivated.

Automatic activation

When DSC is deactivated, automatic activation occurs in the following situations:

- ▷ The vehicle has a flat tire.
- ▷ When activating cruise control in TRACTION or DSC OFF mode.

DTC DYNAMIC TRACTION CONTROL

Concept

DTC is a version of the DSC Dynamic Stability Control where forward momentum is optimized.

The system ensures maximum headway on special road conditions, for instance unplowed snowy roads or loose road surfaces, but with somewhat limited vehicle stability.

When DTC is activated, the vehicle has maximum traction. Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in curves.

Drive carefully.

You may find it useful to briefly activate DTC under the following special circumstances:

- ▷ When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
- ▷ When freeing vehicle from deep snow or driving off from loose ground.
- ▷ When driving with snow chains.

Deactivating/activating DTC Dynamic Traction Control

Activating DTC

Press button.

TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the indicator light for DSC OFF lights up.

Deactivating DTC

Press button again.

TRACTION and the DSC OFF indicator light go out.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

PERFORMANCE CONTROL

Performance Control enhances the agility of the vehicle.

To increase maneuverability, wheels are braked individually when a sporty driving style is used.

ALL4

ALL4 is the all-wheel-drive system of your vehicle. Concerted action by ALL4 and DSC Dynamic Stability Control further optimizes traction and driving dynamics. The ALL4 all-wheel-drive system variably distributes the driving forces to the front and rear axles as demanded by the driving situation and road surface.

DYNAMIC DAMPING CONTROL

Concept

The tuning of the suspension can be changed with the system.

The system offers several different programs.

The programs are selected via the MINI Driving Modes switch.

Programs

MID/GREEN

Balanced tuning of the shock absorbers for more comfort.

SPORT

Consistently sporty tuning of the shock absorbers for greater driving agility.

MINI DRIVING MODES SWITCH

Concept

The MINI Driving Modes switch helps to fine-tune the vehicle's settings and features. Choose between three different programs.

Pressing the MINI Driving Modes switch will activate the particular program.

Operating the programs

MINI Driving Modes switch	Program
	SPORT MID GREEN

MID

MID provides balanced tuning.

With each starting operation, MID is activated using the Start/Stop button.

GREEN

Concept

GREEN, refer to page 210, provides consistent tuning to maximize range.

Activating GREEN

Press the MINI Driving Modes switch downward until GREEN is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Configuring GREEN

Via MINI Driving Modes switch

1. Activate GREEN.
2. "Configure GREEN"
3. Configure the program.

This configuration is retrieved when GREEN is activated.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. If necessary, "Driving mode"
4. "Configure GREEN"
5. Select the desired setting.

This configuration is retrieved when GREEN is activated.

SPORT

Concept

Consistently sporty tuning of the drivetrain for greater driving agility.

With the appropriate equipment, the tuning of the suspension also changes and SPORT can be individually configured.

The configuration is stored for the driver profile currently in use.

Activating SPORT

Press the MINI Driving Modes switch upward until SPORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Configuring SPORT

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. If necessary, "Driving mode"
4. "Configure SPORT"
5. Select the desired setting.

This configuration is retrieved when SPORT is activated.

Configuring driving program

Settings can be made for the following driving programs in Driving mode:

- ▷ GREEN, refer to page 155.
- ▷ SPORT, refer to page 156.

Displays

Program selection

Pressing the MINI Driving Modes switch displays a list of programs, which can be selected.

Selected program

The instrument cluster displays the selected program.

DRIVE-OFF ASSISTANT

Concept

This system supports driving off on uphill grades. The parking brake is not required.

Driving off with the drive-off assistant

1. Hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive off without delay.

After the foot brake is released, the vehicle is held in place for approx. 2 seconds.

SERVOTRONIC

Servotronic is a speed-dependent power steering function.

The system provides the steering force with more support at low speeds than at higher ones. This makes it easier to park, for instance,

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

and makes steering more direct when driving at faster speeds.

Furthermore, the steering force adapts according to the driving program, so that a direct, sporty feel or a comfortable steering response is conveyed.

DRIVING COMFORT

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

CAMERA-BASED CRUISE CONTROL

Concept

Using this system, a desired speed and a distance to a vehicle ahead can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel.

The system maintains the desired speed on clear roads. For this purpose, the vehicle accelerates or brakes automatically.

If a vehicle is driving ahead of you, the system adjusts the speed of your vehicle so that the set distance to the vehicle ahead is maintained. The speed is adjusted as far as the given situation allows.

The distance can be adjusted in several steps. For safety reasons, it depends on the respective speed.

With the Stop&Go function for Steptronic transmissions: if the vehicle ahead of you brakes to a halt, and then proceeds to drive again shortly thereafter, the system is able to detect this within the given system limits.

General information

A camera on the interior mirror is used to detect vehicles driving ahead.

Depending on the driving settings, the features of the cruise control can change in certain areas.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

WARNING

The desired speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

WARNING

Risk of accident due to too high speed differences to other vehicles, for instance in the following situations:

- ▷ When fast approaching a slowly moving vehicle.
- ▷ Vehicle suddenly swerving into own lane.
- ▷ When fast approaching standing vehicles.

There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.◀

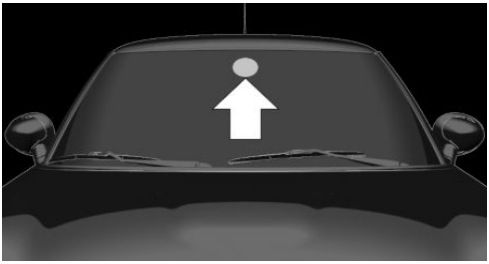
Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Cruise control on/off, refer to page 159.
SET	Store/maintain speed, refer to page 160.
RES CNCL	Pause cruise control, refer to page 159. Continue cruise control with the last setting, refer to page 161.
	Reduce distance, refer to page 161.
	Increase distance, refer to page 161.
+	Increase speed, refer to page 160.
–	Reduce speed, refer to page 160.

Buttons are arranged according to vehicle's series, optional features and country specifications.

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Functional requirements

Speed range

The system is best used on well-constructed roads.

The system is functional at speeds beginning at approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

With the Stop&Go function for Steptronic transmissions: the system can also be activated while the vehicle is stationary.

The max. speed that can be set is 85 mph/140 km/h.

Manual transmission: Active Cruise Control is interrupted below a speed of approx. 20 mph/30 km/h. The system does not brake to a stop.

Switching on/off and interrupting cruise control

Switching on

Press button on the steering wheel.

Display in the instrument cluster lights up.

Display in the instrument cluster lights up. The current speed is adopted as desired speed and displayed with symbol.

Cruise control is active and maintains the set speed.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

Switching off

With the Stop&Go function for Steptronic transmissions: when switching off while stationary, depress the brake pedal simultaneously.

Press button on the steering wheel.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting manually

Press button on the steering wheel.

With the Stop&Go function for Steptronic transmissions: when interrupting while stationary, depress the brake pedal simultaneously.

Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:

- ▷ When the driver applies the brakes.
- ▷ Manual transmission: when the clutch pedal is depressed for a few seconds or released while a gear is not engaged.
- ▷ If selector lever position N is set.
- ▷ Dynamic Traction Control DTC is activated or DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.
- ▷ If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.
- ▷ If the detection range of the camera is impaired, for instance by soiling, heavy precipitation or glare effects from the sun.
- ▷ Manual transmission: if the vehicle in front decelerates below a speed of approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.
- ▷ With the Stop&Go function for Steptronic transmissions: following a stationary period of approx. 3 seconds, after the vehicle was braked to a stop by the system.

Setting the speed

Maintaining/storing the speed

Press ⊞ or ⊟ button in the interrupted state.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

The stored speed is displayed on the symbol.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

The speed can also be stored as follows:

Press button.

Changing the speed

⊞ or ⊟ button: press until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- ▷ ⊞ or ⊟ button: each time it is pressed to the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by approx. 1 mph/1 km/h.
- ▷ ⊞ or ⊟ button: each time it is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

⊞ or ⊟ button: hold down to repeat the action.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

Adjusting distance

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility. Due to the system limits, braking can be late. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Be aware to the traffic situation at all times. Adjust the distance to the traffic and weather conditions and maintain the prescribed safety distance, possibly by braking.◂

Reduce distance

Press button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

The set distance is briefly displayed in the left part of the instrument cluster.

Increase distance

Press button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

The set distance is briefly displayed in the left part of the instrument cluster.

Continuing cruise control

General information

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional braking or accelerating may occur.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- ▷ When the system is switched off.
- ▷ When the ignition is switched off.

Calling up stored speed and distance

RES CNCL Press button with the system interrupted. Cruise control is continued with the stored values. The selected distance is briefly displayed in the Info Display.

Switching distance control on/off

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not react to traffic driving ahead of you, but instead maintains the stored speed. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions and brake as needed.◂

Switching distance control off

Press and hold this button.

Or:

Press and hold this button.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up.

To switch distance control back on, press one of the two buttons again briefly.

After changing over distance control, a Check Control message is displayed.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Desired speed and stored speed

55 In addition to the indicator light, the desired speed is displayed in the Info Display.

- ▷ Display lights up green: system is active, the display indicates the desired speed.

- ▷ Display lights up orange: system is interrupted, the display indicates the stored speed.
- ▷ No display: system is switched off.

If no speed is indicated, it is possible that the conditions necessary for operation are not currently fulfilled.

Distance to vehicle ahead of you

Selected distance from the vehicle driving ahead is briefly displayed in the left hand portion of the Info Display.

Distance display	
	Distance 1
	Distance 2
	Distance 3
	Distance 4 This value is set automatically after the system is switched on.

Detected vehicle

Symbol lights up orange:

A vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

With the Stop&Go function for Steptronic transmissions:

Rolling bars: the detected vehicle has driven away.

ACC does not accelerate. To accelerate, activate ACC as follows:

- ▷ By briefly pressing the accelerator pedal.
- ▷ By pressing the RES CNCL button.
- ▷ By pressing the ⊞ or ⊟ button.

Indicator/warning lights

Symbol flashes orange:

The conditions are not adequate for the system to work.

The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

Symbol flashes red and a signal sounds:

Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

The system has been interrupted or distance control is temporarily suppressed because the accelerator pedal is being pressed; a vehicle was not detected.

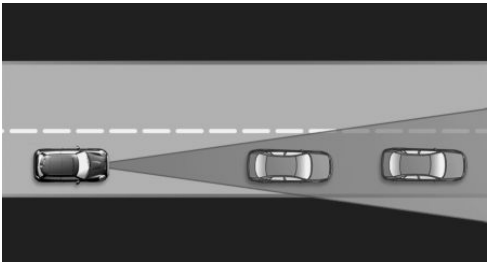
Distance control is temporarily suppressed because the accelerator pedal is being pressed; a vehicle was detected.

Displays in the Head-up Display

The information from Active Cruise Control can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

System limits

Detection range



The detection capacity of the system and the automatic braking capacity are limited.

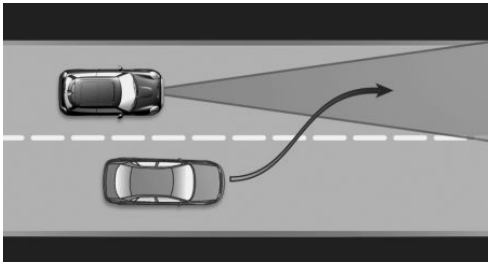
Two-wheeled vehicles for instance might not be detected.

Deceleration

The system does not decelerate in the following situations:

- ▷ For pedestrians, cyclists or similarly slow-moving road users.
- ▷ For red traffic lights.
- ▷ For cross traffic.
- ▷ For oncoming traffic.
- ▷ Unlit vehicles or vehicles with nonworking lighting at night.

Swerving vehicles



A vehicle driving in front of you is not detected until it is completely within the same lane as your vehicle.

If a vehicle driving ahead of you suddenly swerves into your lane, the system may not be able to automatically restore the selected distance. It may not be possible to restore the selected distance in certain situations, including if you are driving significantly faster than vehicles driving ahead of you, for instance when rapidly approaching a truck. When a vehicle driving ahead of you is reliably detected, the system requests that the driver intervene by braking and carrying out evasive maneuvers, if needed.

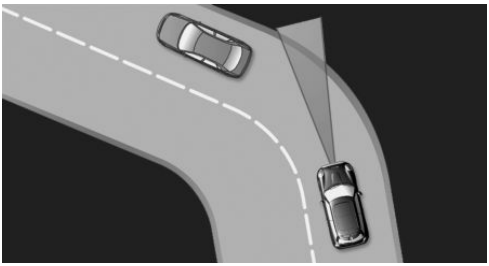
With the Stop&Go function for Steptronic transmissions: driving off

In some situations, the vehicle cannot drive off automatically; for example:

- ▷ On steep uphill grades.
- ▷ From bumps in the road.

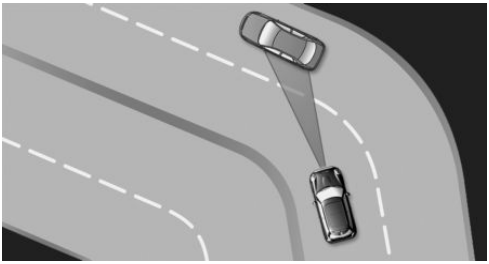
In these cases, press on the accelerator pedal.

Cornering



If the desired speed is too high for a curve, the speed is reduced slightly, although curves cannot be anticipated in advance. Therefore, drive into a curve at an appropriate speed.

The system has a limited detection range. Situations can arise in tight curves where a vehicle driving ahead will not be detected or will be detected very late.



When you approach a curve the system may briefly report vehicles in the next lane due to the bend of the curve. If the system decelerates you may compensate it by briefly accelerating. After releasing the accelerator pedal the system is reactivated and controls speed independently.

Weather

The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- ▷ Poorer vehicle recognition.

- ▷ Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

Examples of unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- ▷ Wet conditions.
- ▷ Snowfall.
- ▷ Slush.
- ▷ Fog.
- ▷ Glare.

Drive attentively, and react to the current traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or evading.

Engine power

The desired speed may not be maintained on uphill grades if engine power is insufficient.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed if the system fails or was automatically deactivated.

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▷ When an object was not correctly detected.
- ▷ In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- ▷ In tight curves.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the windshield are dirty or covered.
- ▷ When driving toward bright lights.
- ▷ Up to 20 seconds after the start of the engine, via the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

CRUISE CONTROL

Concept

Using this system, a desired speed can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel. The system maintains the desired speed. The system accelerates and brakes automatically as needed.

General information

The system is functional at speeds beginning at approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

Depending on the driving settings, the features of the cruise control can change in certain areas.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

WARNING

The use of the system can lead to an increased risk of accidents in the following situations, for instance:

- ▷ On winding roads.
- ▷ In heavy traffic.
- ▷ On slippery roads, in fog, snow, or wet conditions, or on a loose road surface.

There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Only use the system if driving at constant speed is possible.◀

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Cruise control on/off, refer to page 165.
SET	Store speed, refer to page 165.

Button	Function
RES CNCL	Pause cruise control, refer to page 165. Continue cruise control with the last setting, refer to page 166.
+	Increase speed, refer to page 165.
–	Reduce speed, refer to page 165.

Switching on/off and interrupting cruise control

Switching on

Press button on the steering wheel.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up.

The current speed is adopted as the desired speed and is displayed with the symbol in the instrument cluster.

Cruise control is active and maintains the set speed.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

Switching off

Press button on the steering wheel.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting manually

RES CNCL When active, press the button on the steering wheel.

Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:

- When the driver applies the brakes.
- If the clutch pedal is depressed for a few seconds or released while a gear is not engaged.
- If the gear engaged is too high for the current speed.
- If selector lever position N is set.
- Dynamic Traction Control DTC is activated or DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.
- If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.

Setting the speed

Maintaining/storing the speed

Press ⊞ or ⊟ button in the interrupted state.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

The stored speed is displayed in the instrument cluster.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

The speed can also be stored as follows:

SET Press button.

Changing the speed

⊞ or ⊟ button: press until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- ⊞ or ⊟ button: each time it is pressed to the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by approx. 1 mph/1 km/h.
- ⊞ or ⊟ button: each time it is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.
- ⊞ or ⊟ button: pressing it to the resistance point and holding it accelerates or de-

celerates the vehicle without requiring pressure on the accelerator pedal. After the button is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed. Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.

Continuing cruise control

General information

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional braking or accelerating may occur.

Calling up stored speed

Press button on the steering wheel.

The stored speed is reached again and maintained.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Indicator light

Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, the indicator light in the instrument cluster indicates whether the system is switched on.

Desired speed and stored speed

The desired speed is displayed together with the symbol.

- ▷ Display lights up green: system is active, the display indicates the desired speed.
- ▷ Display lights up orange: system is interrupted, the display indicates the stored speed.
- ▷ No display: system is switched off.

If no speed is indicated, it is possible that the conditions necessary for operation are not currently fulfilled.

System limits

Engine power

The desired speed is also maintained downhill, but may not be maintained on uphill grades if engine power is insufficient.

PDC PARK DISTANCE CONTROL

Concept

PDC is a support when parking. When you slowly approach an object in the rear - or also in the front of the vehicle if the feature is available - then the object is reported through:

- ▷ Signal tones.
- ▷ Visual display.

General information

The ultrasound sensors for measuring the distances are located in the bumpers.

The maneuvering range, depending on obstacles and environmental conditions, is approx. 6 ft/2 m.

An acoustic warning is first given in the following situations:

- ▷ By the front middle sensors and the two corner sensors at approx. 24 in/60 cm from the object.
- ▷ By the rear middle sensors at approx. 5 ft/1.50 m from the object.
- ▷ When a collision is imminent.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

WARNING

Due to high speeds when PDC Park Distance Control is activated, the warning can be delayed due to physical circumstances. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Avoid approaching an object too fast. Avoid driving off fast while PDC Park Distance Control is not yet active.◀

Overview

With front PDC: button in vehicle

Park assistance button

Ultrasound sensors

Ultrasound sensors of the PDC, for instance in the bumpers.

Functional requirements

Ensure full functionality:

- ▷ Do not cover sensors, for instance with stickers, bicycle racks.
- ▷ Keep the sensors clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system switches on automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ If selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.

  The rearview camera also switches on.
- ▷ With front PDC: when obstacles are detected behind or in front of the vehicle by PDC and the speed is slower than approx. 2.5 mph/4 km/h.

With front PDC: automatic activation on obstacle detection can be switched off. Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Parking"
4. "Automatic PDC activation": only with respective equipment.
5. "Automatic PDC activation"

   The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

With front PDC: switching on/off manually

Press park assistance button.

- ▷ On: the LED lights up.
- ▷ Off: the LED goes out.

The rearview camera image is displayed if the reverse gear is engaged when pressing the park assistance button.

WARNING

Signal tones

When approaching an object, an intermittent sound indicates the position of the object. E.g., if an object is detected to the left rear of the vehicle, a signal tone sounds from the left rear speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object, the shorter the intervals.

If the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 10 inches/25 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.

With front PDC: if objects are simultaneously located both in front of and behind the vehicle, an alternating continuous signal is sounded.

The signal tone is switched off, when selector lever position P is engaged on vehicles with Steptronic transmission.

Volume

The ratio of the PDC signal tone volume to the entertainment volume can be adjusted.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Tone"
4. "Volume settings"
5. "PDC"
6. Set the desired value.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Visual warning

The approach of the vehicle to an object can be shown on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are already displayed on the Control Display before a signal sounds.

A display appears as soon as Park Distance Control (PDC) is activated.

The range of the sensors is represented in colors: red, green and yellow.

When the image of the rearview camera is displayed, the switch can be made to PDC:

"Rear view camera"

System limits

Safety information

WARNING

The system can react not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to the system limits. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Follow the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.◀

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

Ultrasonic measuring might not function under the following circumstances:

- For small children and animals.
- For persons with certain clothing, for instance coats.
- With external interference of the ultrasound, for instance from passing vehicles or loud machines.
- When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.
- If cargo protrudes.
- Under certain weather conditions such as high relative humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, extreme heat, or strong wind.
- With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With moving objects.
- With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges or cargo.
- With objects with corners and sharp edges.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

- With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- For objects with porous surfaces.
- Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.

False warnings

The system may issue a warning under the following conditions even though there is no obstacle within the detection range:

- In heavy rain.
- When sensors are very dirty or covered with ice.
- When sensors are covered in snow.
- On rough road surfaces.
- On uneven surfaces, such as speed bumps.
- In large buildings with right angles and smooth walls, for instance in underground garages.
- In automatic vehicle washes.
- Due to heavy exhaust.
- Due to other ultrasound sources, for instance sweeping machines, high pressure steam cleaners or neon lights.

  The malfunction is signaled by a continuous tone alternating between the front and rear speakers. As soon as the malfunction due to other ultrasound sources is no longer present, the system is again fully functional.

With front PDC: to reduce false alarms, switch off automatic PDC activation on obstacle detection, for instance in vehicle washes; see Switching on/off.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Red symbol is displayed, and the range of the sensors is dimmed on the Control Display.

PDC has failed. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

REARVIEW CAMERA

Concept

The rearview camera provides assistance in parking and maneuvering backwards. The area behind the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

Overview

If the vehicle is equipped accordingly: button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Camera

The camera lens is located in the handle of the tailgate.

The image quality may be impaired by dirt. If necessary, clean the camera lens.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is switched on automatically if selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

If the vehicle is equipped accordingly: switching on/off manually

Press park assistance button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The PDC is shown on the Control Display.

The rearview camera image is displayed if the reverse gear is engaged when pressing the park assistance button.

Switching the view via the Central Information Display (CID)

With PDC Park Distance Control activated:

"Rear view camera"

The rearview camera image is displayed.

Display on the Control Display

Functional requirement

- The rearview camera is switched on.
- The tailgate is fully closed.
- Keep the recording range of the camera clear. Protruding cargo or carrier systems and trailers that are not connected to a trailer power socket can lead to malfunctions.

Activating the assistance functions

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

- Parking aid lines

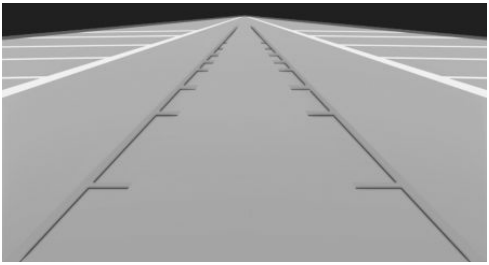
  "Parking aid lines"

  Lanes and turning radius are indicated.
- Obstacle marking

  "Obstacle marking"

  If the vehicle is equipped accordingly, obstacles are highlighted.

Pathway lines

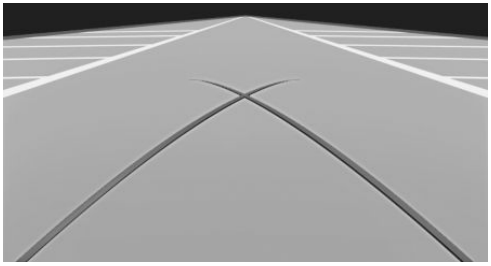


Pathway lines can be superimposed on the image of the rearview camera.

Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

Pathway lines depend on the current steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

Turning radius lines

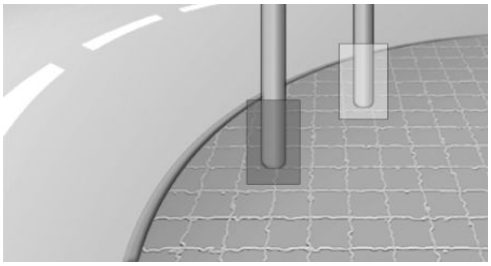


Turning radius lines can be superimposed on the image of the rearview camera.

Turning radius lines show the course of the smallest possible turning radius on a level road.

Only one turning radius line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

Obstacle marking

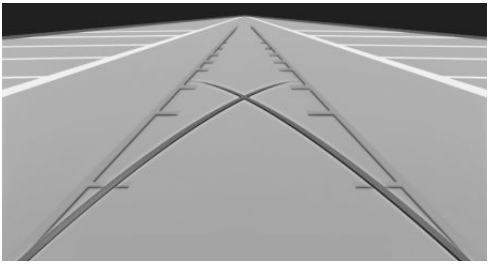


If the vehicle is equipped accordingly, obstacle markings can be faded into the image of the rearview camera.

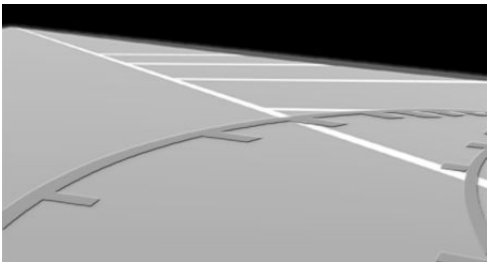
The colored thresholds of the obstacle markings match the markings of the PDC Park Distance Control.

Parking using pathway and turning radius lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the turning radius lines lead to within the limits of the parking space.



2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the pathway line covers the corresponding turning radius line.



Display settings

Brightness

With the rearview camera switched on:

1. ☼ Select the symbol.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is reached and press the Controller.

Contrast

With the rearview camera switched on:

1. ◐ Select the symbol.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is reached and press the Controller.

System limits

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles or high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be recognized by the system.

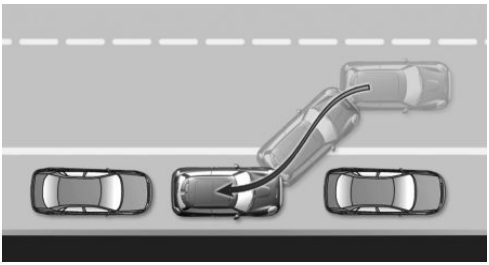
If the vehicle is equipped accordingly, certain assistance functions also take into account data from PDC Park Distance Control.

Follow the notes in the PDC Park Distance Control chapter.

The objects displayed on the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Therefore, do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

PARKING ASSISTANT

Concept



This system assists the driver in parking parallel to the road.

General information

Parking assistant handling is divided into three steps:

- ▷ Switching on and activating.
- ▷ Parking space search.
- ▷ Parking.

Ultrasound sensors measure parking spaces on both sides of the vehicle.

The parking assistant calculates the best possible parking line and takes control of steering during the parking procedure.

System status and instructions on required actions are displayed on the Control Display.

A component of the parking assistant is the PDC Park Distance Control.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

NOTE

The parking assistant can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of damage to property. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

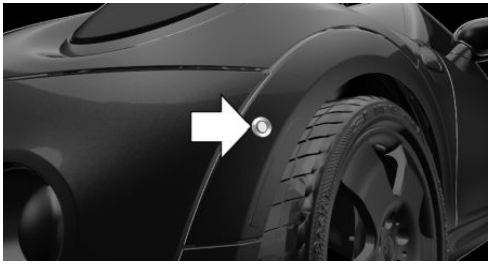
The safety information of the PDC Park Distance Control applies in addition.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Ultrasound sensors



The ultrasound sensors for measuring parking spaces are located on the wheel housing.

Functional requirements

Ultrasound sensors

Ensure full functionality:

- ▷ Do not cover sensors, for instance with stickers.
- ▷ Keep the sensors clean and unobstructed.

For measuring parking spaces

- ▷ Maximum speed while driving forward approx. 22 mph/35 km/h.
- ▷ Maximum distance to row of parked vehicles: 5 ft/1.5 m.

Suitable parking space

- ▷ Gaps behind an object that has a min. length of 5 ft/1.5 m.
- ▷ Gap between two objects with a minimum length of approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.
- ▷ Min. length of gap between two objects: your vehicle's length plus approx. 3.3 ft/1.0 m.
- ▷ Minimum depth: approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.

For parking

- ▷ Doors and tailgate are closed.
- ▷ The parking brake is released.
- ▷ When parking in parking spaces on the driver's side, the corresponding turn signal must be set.

Switching on and activating

Switching on with the button

Press park assistance button.

The LED lights up.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

Parking assistant is activated automatically.

Switching on with reverse gear

Shift into reverse.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

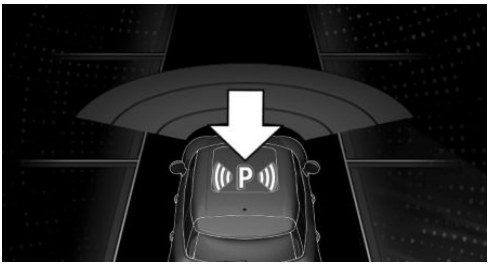
To activate: "Parking Assistant"

Indicator on the Control Display

System activated/deactivated

Symbol	Meaning
	Gray: the system is not available. White: the system is available but not activated.
	The system is activated.

Parking space search and system status



- Symbol P on the vehicle image: the parking assistant is activated and the parking space search is active.
- Control Display shows suitable parking spaces at the edge of the road next to the vehicle symbol. When the parking assistant is active, suitable parking spaces are highlighted.
- The parking procedure is active. Steering control has been taken over by system.
- Parking space search is always active whenever the vehicle is moving forward slow and straight, even if the system is deactivated. When the system is deactivated, the displays on the Control Display are shown in gray.

Parking using the parking assistant

Parking

1. Press the park assistance button or shift into reverse gear to switch on the parking assistant, refer to page 173. Activate the parking assistant, if needed.

   Parking assistant is activated.
2. Pass the row of parked vehicles at a speed of up to approx. 22 mph/35 km/h and at a distance of maximum 5 ft/1.5 m.

   The status of the parking space search and possible parking spaces are displayed on the display, refer to page 173.
3. Follow the instructions on the display.

   The best possible parking position will come after gear change on the stationary vehicle - wait for the automatic steering wheel move.

   The end of the parking procedure is indicated on the display.
4. Adjust the parking position yourself, if needed.

Interrupting manually

The parking assistant can be interrupted at any time:

- Press park assistance button.
- "Parking Assistant"

Interrupting automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

- If the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- If a gear is selected that does not match the instruction on the display.
- If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 6 mph/10 km/h.
- Possibly on snow-covered or slippery road surfaces.
- If a maximum number of parking attempts or the time taken for parking is exceeded.
- If the PDC Park Distance Control displays clearances that are too small.
- When switching into other functions of the radio.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Resuming

An interrupted parking procedure can be continued, if needed.

Reactivate the parking assistant, refer to page 173, and follow the instructions on the display.

Switching off

The system can be switched off as follows:

▷ Press park assistance button.

▷ Switching off the ignition.

System limits

Safety information

WARNING

The system can react not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to the system limits. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Follow the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.◀

No parking assistance

The parking assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:

▷ In tight curves.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

▷ On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.

▷ On slippery ground.

▷ With accumulations of leaves/snow in the parking space.

▷ With a mounted emergency wheel.

▷ With ditches or edges, for instance an edge of a port.

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

Ultrasonic measuring might not function under the following circumstances:

▷ For small children and animals.

▷ For persons with certain clothing, for instance coats.

▷ With external interference of the ultrasound, for instance from passing vehicles or loud machines.

▷ When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.

▷ If cargo protrudes.

▷ Under certain weather conditions such as high relative humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, extreme heat, or strong wind.

▷ With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.

▷ With thin or wedge-shaped objects.

▷ With moving objects.

▷ With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges or cargo.

▷ With objects with corners and sharp edges.

▷ With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.

▷ For objects with porous surfaces.

▷ Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.

▷ The parking assistant may identify parking spaces that are not suitable for parking.

Tire size

The parking position may vary depending on the tire size.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking assistant failed. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

CLIMATE CONTROL

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

INTERIOR AIR QUALITY

The air quality inside the vehicle is improved by an emissions-tested interior, a microfilter, and a climate-control system for regulating temperature, air flow, and recirculated-air mode.

In addition there are other functions which depend on the vehicle's equipment, for instance microfilter/activated-charcoal filter, automatic climate control, and parked-car ventilation.

AIR CONDITIONER

1 Air distribution settings
2 Air flow
3 Temperature
4 Seat heating, right 74
5 Air conditioning
6 Recirculated-air mode
7 Rear window defroster
8 Windshield defroster

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

9 Seat heating, left 74

Climate control functions in detail

Switching the system on/off

Switching on

Set any air flow.

Switching off

Turn the wheel for air flow all the way to the left.

Temperature

Concept

The system heats or cools, depending on the set temperature.

Settings

Turn the ring to set the desired temperature.

Air conditioning

Concept

The air in the car's interior will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

The car's interior can only be cooled with the engine running.

Switching on/off

Press button.

The LED is illuminated with air conditioning switched on.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog up briefly when the engine is started.

The air conditioner produces condensation water, refer to page 207, that will exit from below the vehicle.

Recirculated-air mode

Concept

You may react to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air flow within the vehicle.

Operation

Press button repeatedly to select an operating mode:

- ▷ LED off: outside air flows in continuously.
- ▷ LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air into the vehicle is permanently blocked.

To prevent window condensation, recirculated-air mode switches off automatically after a certain amount of time, depending on the external temperature.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the car's interior deteriorates and the fogging of the windows increases.

If the windows fog over, switch off recirculated-air mode and increase the air flow, if needed.

Controlling the air flow manually

Concept

The air flow for climate control can be adjusted manually.

Operation

Turn the ring to set the desired air flow.

The higher the air flow, the more effective the heating or cooling will be.

The air flow from the air conditioner may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

Controlling the air distribution manually

Concept

The air distribution for climate control can be adjusted manually.

Operation

Turn the wheel to select the desired program or the desired intermediate setting.

- ▷ Windows.
- ▷ Upper body region.
- ▷ Floor area.
- ▷ Windows, upper body region, and floor area.

Defrosting windows and removing condensation

Make the following settings to defrost the windows and remove condensation:

- ▷ Direct the air distribution onto the windows.
- ▷ Increasing the air flow.
- ▷ Increase the temperature.
- ▷ Switch on the air conditioning if needed.

Windshield defroster

Press button. The LED lights up.

The front window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Rear window defroster

Press button. The LED lights up.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

For permanent activation, press the button for longer than 3 seconds. To deactivate, press the button again.

The rear window defroster can only be activated continuously at an external temperature below approx. 41 °F/5 °C.

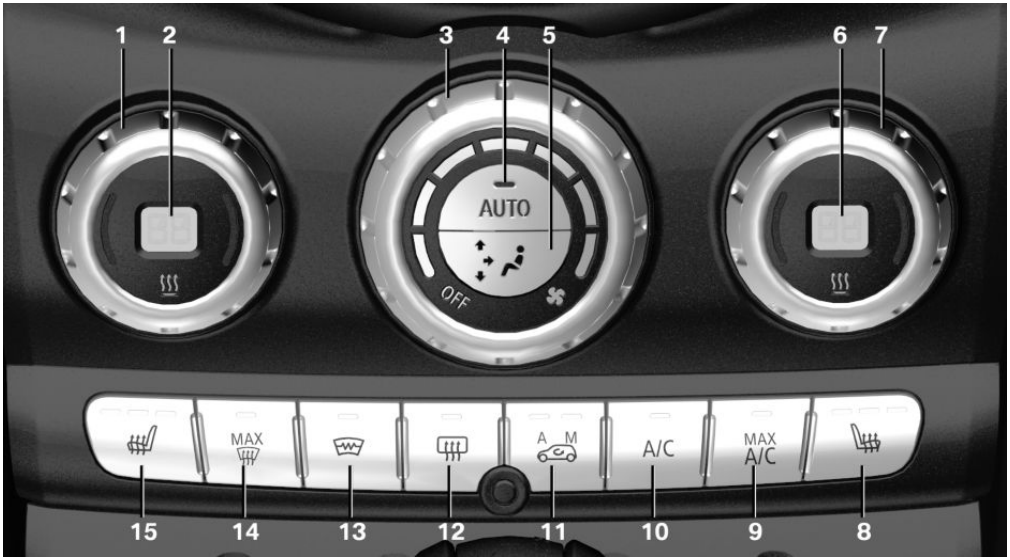
When GREEN Mode is activated, the heater output is reduced.

Microfilter

In external and recirculated-air mode the microfilter filters dust and pollen from the air.

Have this filter changed during vehicle maintenance, refer to page 249.

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL



1 Temperature, left
2 Display
3 Air flow, AUTO intensity
4 AUTO program
5 Air distribution, manual
6 Display
7 Temperature, right
8 Seat heating, right 74
9 Maximum cooling
10 Air conditioning
11 Recirculated-air mode
12 Rear window defroster
13 Windshield defroster
14 Defrosting windows and removing condensation
15 Seat heating, left 74

Climate control functions in detail

Switching the system on/off

Switching on

Set any air flow.

Switching off

Turn wheel for air flow to the left until the control switches off.

Temperature

Concept

The automatic climate control achieves the set temperature as quickly as possible, if necessary

by using the maximum cooling or heating power, and then keeps it constant.

Settings

Turn the ring to set the desired temperature.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. The automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Air conditioning

Concept

The air in the car's interior will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

The car's interior can only be cooled with the engine running.

Switching on/off

A/C Press button.

The LED is illuminated with air conditioning switched on.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog up briefly when the engine is started.

The air conditioning is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water, refer to page 207, develops and drains underneath the vehicle. This is normal.

Maximum cooling

Concept

The system is set to the lowest temperature, maximum air flow and recirculated-air mode.

General information

The function is available with external temperatures beyond approx. 32 °F/0 °C and with the engine running.

Air flows out of the vents to the upper body region. The vents need to be open for this.

The air flow can be adjusted with the air flow active.

Switching on/off

MAX A/C Press button.

The LED is illuminated with the system switched on.

The system is set to the lowest temperature, optimum air flow and air circulation mode.

AUTO program

Concept

Air flow, air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically.

Switching on/off

AUTO Press button.

The LED is illuminated with the AUTO program switched on.

Depending on the selected temperature, AUTO intensity and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the floor area.

The following features are switched on automatically with the AUTO program:

▷ The air conditioning, refer to page 180.

To switch off the program: press the button again or manually adjust the air distribution.

Intensity

With the AUTO program activated, the automatic intensity control can be changed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

Turn the ring to set the desired intensity from soft to intensive.

The set intensity is displayed via the position of the illuminated LED segment.

Automatic recirculated-air control/ recirculated-air mode

Concept

The automatic recirculated-air control AUC recognizes odors or pollutants in the outside air. The outside air supply is shut off and the interior air is recirculated.

General information

If the system is activated, a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls the shut-off automatically.

If the system is deactivated, outside air continuously flows into the car's interior.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the car's interior deteriorates and the fogging of the windows increases.

You may react to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air flow within the vehicle.

Switching on/off

Press button repeatedly to select an operating mode:

- ▷ LEDs off: outside air flows in continuously.
- ▷ Left LED on, automatic recirculated-air control: a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and shuts off automatically.
- ▷ Right LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air into the vehicle is permanently blocked.

To prevent window condensation, recirculated-air mode switches off automatically after a certain amount of time, depending on the external temperature.

If windows are fogged over, switch off the recirculating mode and press the AUTO button. Make sure that air can flow to the windshield.

Controlling the air flow manually

Concept

The air flow for climate control can be adjusted manually.

General information

To manually adjust air flow switch off AUTO program first.

Operation

Turn the ring to set the desired air flow.

The manually adjusted air flow is displayed via illuminated LED segments.

The air flow of the automatic climate control may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

Controlling the air distribution manually

Concept

The air distribution for climate control can be adjusted manually.

Operation

Press button repeatedly to select a program:

- ▷ Windows, upper body region, and floor area.
- ▷ Upper body region and floor area.

- ▷ Floor area.
- ▷ Windows and floor area.
- ▷ Windows.
- ▷ Windows and upper body region.
- ▷ Upper body region.

Defrosting windows and removing condensation

Concept

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

Switching on/off

Press button.

The LED is illuminated with the system switched on.

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

The air flow can be adjusted with the air flow active.

If there is window condensation, switch on the air conditioning too.

Windshield defroster

Press button. The LED lights up.

The front window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Rear window defroster

Press button. The LED lights up.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

For permanent activation, press the button for longer than 3 seconds. To deactivate, press the button again.

The rear window defroster can only be activated continuously at an external temperature below approx. 41 °F/5 °C.

When GREEN Mode is activated, the heater output is reduced.

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

In external and recirculated-air mode the microfilter/activated charcoal filter filters dust, pollen, and gaseous pollutants out of the air.

Have this filter changed during vehicle maintenance, refer to page 249.

VENTILATION

Setting

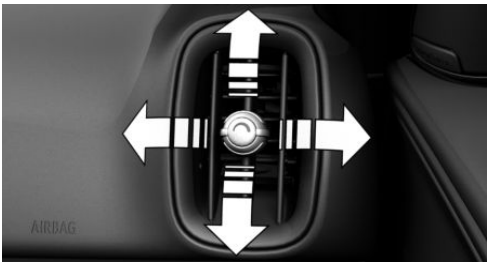
The air flow directions can be individually adjusted:

- ▷ Direct ventilation:

  The air flow is directly pointed onto the person. The air flow heats or cools noticeably, depending on the adjusted temperature.
- ▷ Indirect ventilation:

  If the vents are fully or partly closed, the air is directly routed into the car's interior.

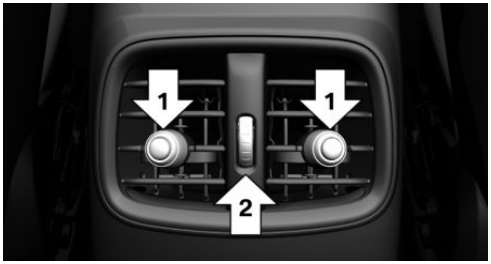
Front ventilation



- ▷ Turn knob for continuous opening and closing of the vents.
- ▷ Swivel the vents to alter the direction of the vent flow, arrows.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

Ventilation in the rear



- ▷ Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.
- ▷ Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the vents, arrow 2.

PARKED-CAR VENTILATION

Concept

The parked-car ventilation ventilates the car's interior and lowers its temperature, if needed.

General information

The parked-car ventilation can be switched on and off directly or by using two preset activation times. The system remains switched on for 30 minutes.

The parked-car ventilation system is operated via the Central Information Display (CID).

Functional requirements

- ▷ Direct operation: vehicle is in radio-ready state.
- ▷ Direct operation or preset activation time: does not depend on external temperature.
- ▷ Battery is sufficiently charged.

  If parked-car ventilation is switched on, the vehicle battery will be discharged. Thus, limit the maximum activation time to save the vehicle battery. The system will be available again after the engine is started or after a short trip.
- ▷ Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.
- ▷ Open the vents to allow air to flow out.

Switching on/off directly

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. If necessary, "Climate functions"
4. "Activate comfort ventilation now"

The symbol on the automatic climate control flashes if the system is switched on.

Preselecting the activation time

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. If necessary, "Climate functions"
4. "Comfort ventilation"
5. Select the desired activation time.
6. Set the desired time.

Activating the activation time

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. If necessary, "Climate functions"
4. "For start time at:"

   Activate the desired activation time.

The symbol on the automatic climate control lights up when the activation time is activated.

The symbol on the automatic climate control flashes when the system has been switched on.

The system will only be switched on within the next 24 hours. After that, it needs to be reactivated.

INTERIOR EQUIPMENT

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

INTEGRATED UNIVERSAL REMOTE CONTROL

Concept

The integrated Universal Remote Control in the interior mirror can operate up to 3 functions of remote-controlled systems, such as garage door drives, barriers, or lighting systems. The integrated Universal Remote Control replaces up to 3 different hand-held transmitters. To operate the remote control, the buttons on the interior mirror must be programmed with the desired functions. The hand-held transmitter for the particular system is required in order to program the remote control.

Before selling the vehicle, delete the stored functions for the sake of security.

Safety information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating remote-controlled systems, such as the garage door, using the integrated Universal Remote Control. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety information of the hand-held transmitter.◀

Compatibility

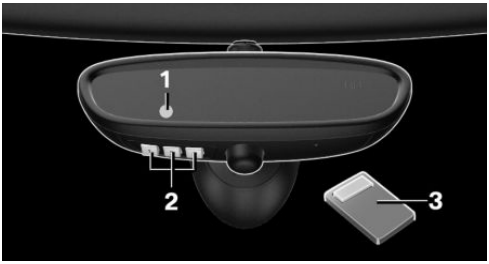
If this symbol is printed on the packaging or in the owner's manual of the system to be controlled, the system is generally compatible with the integrated Universal Remote Control.

If you have any questions, please contact:

- ▷ A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- ▷ www.homelink.com on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

Overview



1 LED

2 Programmable keys

3 Hand-held transmitters of the system

Programming

General information

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Initial setup:

   Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for ap-

proximately 20 seconds until the LED on the interior mirror flashes. This erases all programming of the buttons on the interior mirror.

3. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be controlled approx. 1 to 3 inches/2.5 to 8 cm away from the buttons of the interior mirror. The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.
4. Simultaneously press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter and the button to be programmed on the interior mirror. The LED on the interior mirror will begin flashing slowly.
5. Release both buttons as soon as the LED flashes more rapidly. The LED flashing faster indicates that the button on the interior mirror has been programmed.

   If the LED does not flash faster after at least 60 seconds, change the distance between the interior mirror and the hand-held transmitter and repeat the step. Several more attempts at different distances may be necessary. Wait at least 15 seconds between attempts.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.
6. To program other functions on other buttons, repeat steps 3 to 5.

The systems can be controlled using the interior mirror buttons.

Special feature of the rolling code wireless system

If you are unable to operate the system after repeated programming, please check if the system to be controlled features a rolling code radio system.

Read the system's owner's manual, or press the programmed button on the interior mirror longer. If the LED on the interior mirror starts flashing rapidly and then stays lit constantly for 2 seconds, the system features a rolling code radio system. Flashing and continuous illumination of the LED will repeat for approximately 20 seconds.

For systems with a rolling code radio system, the integrated Universal Remote Control and the system also have to be synchronized.

Please read the owner's manual to find out how to synchronize the system.

Synchronizing is easier with the aid of a second person.

Synchronizing the universal remote control with the system:

1. Park the vehicle within range of the remote-controlled system.
2. Program the relevant button on the interior mirror as described.
3. Locate and press the synchronizing button on the system being programmed. You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.
4. Hold down the programmed button on the interior mirror for approximately 3 seconds and then release it. If necessary, repeat this step up to three times in order to finish synchronization. Once synchronization is complete, the programmed function will be carried out.

Reprogramming individual buttons

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press and hold the interior mirror button to be programmed.
3. As soon as the interior mirror LED starts flashing slowly, hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be controlled approx. 1 to 3 inches/2.5 to 8 cm away from the buttons of the interior mirror. The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.

4. Likewise, press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Release both buttons as soon as the interior mirror LED flashes more rapidly. The LED flashing faster indicates that the button on the interior mirror has been programmed. The system can then be controlled by the button on the interior mirror.

   If the LED does not flash faster after at most 60 seconds, change the distance and repeat the programming starting with step 4. Several more attempts at different distances may be necessary. Wait at least 15 seconds between attempts.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.

Operation

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating remote-controlled systems, such as the garage door, using the integrated Universal Remote Control. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety information of the hand-held transmitter.◂

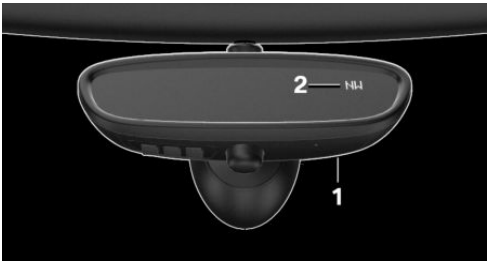
The system, such as the garage door, can be operated using the button on the interior mirror while the engine is running or when the ignition is started. To do this, hold down the button within receiving range of the system until the function is activated. The interior mirror LED stays lit while the wireless signal is being transmitted.

Deleting stored functions

Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the LED on the interior mirror flashes rapidly. All stored functions will be deleted. The functions cannot be deleted individually.

DIGITAL COMPASS

Overview



1 Control button

2 Mirror display

Mirror display

The point of the compass is displayed in the mirror when driving straight.

Operating concept

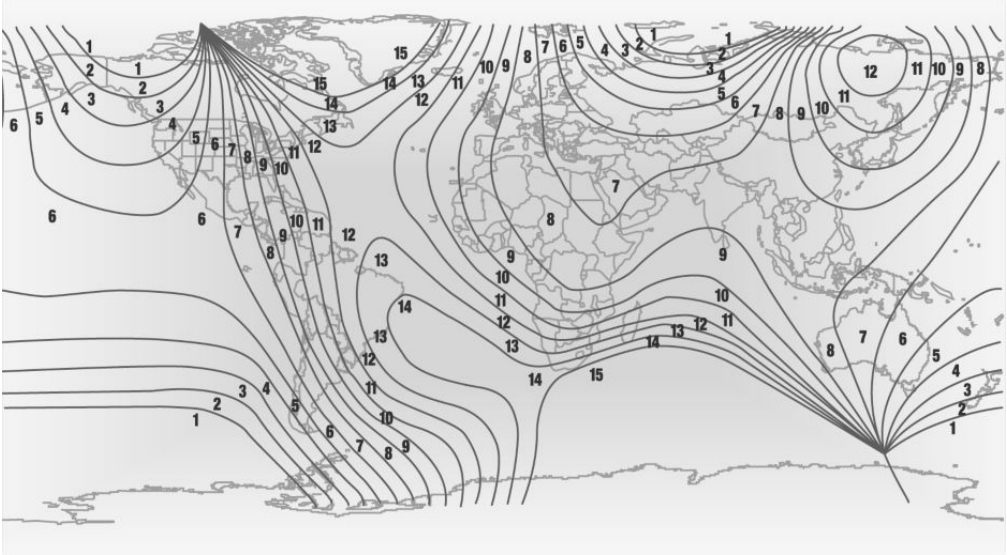
Various functions can be called up by pressing the control button with a pointed object, such as the tip of a ballpoint pen or similar object. The following setting options are displayed in succession, depending on how long the control button is pressed:

- ▷ Pressed briefly: turns display on/off.
- ▷ 3 to 6 seconds: compass zone setting.
- ▷ 6 to 9 seconds: compass calibration.
- ▷ 9 to 12 seconds: left/right-hand steering setting.
- ▷ 12 to 15 seconds: language setting.

Setting the compass zones

Sets the particular compass zones on the vehicle so that the compass operates correctly; refer to World map with compass zones.

World map with magnetic zones



Procedure

1. Press and hold the control button for approx. 3 to 4 seconds. The number of the set compass zone appears in the mirror.
2. To change the zone setting, press the control button quickly and repeatedly until the number of the compass zone that corresponds with your location appears in the mirror.

The set zone is stored automatically. The compass is ready for use again after approximately 10 seconds.

Calibrating the digital compass

The digital compass must be calibrated in the event of the following:

▷ The wrong compass point is displayed.

▷ The point of the compass displayed does not change despite changing the direction of travel.

▷ Not all points of the compass are displayed.

Procedure

1. Make sure that there are no large metallic objects or overhead power lines near the vehicle and that there is sufficient room to drive around in a circle.
2. Set the currently applicable compass zone.
3. Press and hold the control button for approx. 6 to 7 seconds so that "C" appears on the display. Next, drive in a complete circle at least once at a speed of no more than 4 mph/7 km/h. If calibration is successful, the "C" is replaced by the points of the compass.

Left/right-hand steering

The digital compass is already set for right or left-hand steering at the factory.

Setting the language

Press and hold the control button for approx. 12 to 13 seconds. Briefly press the control button again to switch between English "E" and German "O".

Settings are stored automatically after approximately 10 seconds.

SUN VISOR

Glare shield

To provide protection against glare, fold the sun visor down or pivot it to the side.

Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located in the sun visor behind a cover.

When the cover is opened, the mirror lighting switches on.

ASHTRAY/CIGARETTE LIGHTER

Overview

The ashtray is located in one of the frontal cup holders, the cigarette lighter above it in the center console.

Ashtray

In order to empty the ashtray, remove the ashtray from the cup holder.

Cigarette lighter

Safety information

WARNING

Contact with the hot heating element or the hot socket of the cigarette lighter can cause burns. Flammable materials can ignite if the cigarette lighter falls down or is held against the respective objects. There is a risk of fire and injuries. Take hold of the cigarette lighter by its handle. Make sure that children do not use the cigarette lighter and burn themselves.◀

NOTE

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of damage to property. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.◀

Operation

Push in the cigarette lighter.

The cigarette lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

SOCKETS

Concept

The lighter socket can be used as a socket for electrical equipment while the ignition is switched on or the engine is running.

General information

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

Do not damage the socket by using non-compatible connectors.

Safety information

WARNING

Devices and cables in the unfolding area of the airbags, such as portable navigation devices, can hinder the unfolding of the airbag or be thrown around in the car's interior during unfolding. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that devices and cables are not in the airbag's area of unfolding.◀

NOTE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12 volt on-board network can be overloaded or damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.◀

NOTE

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of damage to property. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.◀

In the front center console

Remove the cover or cigarette lighter.

In the rear center console

Remove the cover.

In the cargo area

The socket is located on the right side in the cargo area.

USB INTERFACE/AUX-IN PORT

Concept

Mobile devices with USB port can be connected to the USB interface.

A mobile audio device, for instance a MP3 player, can be connected using the AUX-IN port.

General information

Follow the information regarding the connection of mobile devices to the USB interface in the section on USB connections, refer to page 38.

In the center console

The USB interface and the AUX-IN port are located at the front in the center console.

Under the center armrest

The USB interface is located under the center armrest.

STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

SAFETY INFORMATION

WARNING

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, for instance mobile phones, can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the car's interior.◀

NOTE

Anti-slip pads such as anti-slip mats can damage the dashboard. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use anti-slip pads.◀

OVERVIEW

The following storage compartments are available in the car's interior:

- ▷ Glove compartment on the front passenger side.
- ▷ Storage compartment under the driver's seat.
- ▷ Compartments in the doors.
- ▷ Storage compartment in the center armrest.
- ▷ Storage compartment in front of the cup holders.
- ▷ Clothes hooks
- ▷ Storage compartments in the cargo area.
- ▷ Storage tray in the center console.
- ▷ Pockets on the backrests of the front seats.

GLOVE COMPARTMENT

Safety information

WARNING

Folded open, the glove compartment protrudes in the car's interior. Objects in the glove compartment can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Always close the glove compartment immediately after using it.◀

Opening

Pull the handle.

The light in the glove compartment switches on.

Closing

Fold up the cover.

DRIVER'S SEAT

There is a storage compartment under the driver's seat.

COMPARTMENTS IN THE DOORS

WARNING

Breakable objects, such as glass bottles or glasses, can break in the event of an accident or a braking or evasive maneuver. Broken glass can be scattered in the car's interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not use any breakable objects while driving. Only stow breakable objects in closed storage compartments.◂

CENTER ARMREST

General information

The center armrest contains a storage compartment.

Opening

Press button, arrow 1, and open center armrest upward, arrow 2.

Set the incline

The center armrest can be adjusted in several tilt settings.

CUP HOLDERS

Safety information

WARNING

Unsuitable containers in the cup holder and hot beverages can damage the cup holder and increase the risk of injury in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Use light-weight, unbreakable, and sealable containers. Do not transport hot beverages. Do not force objects into the cup holder.◂

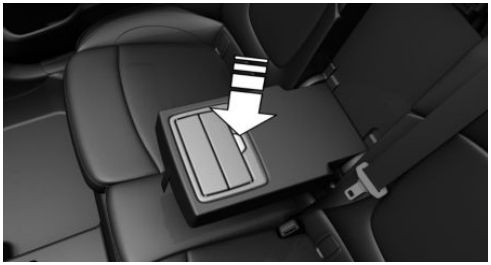
Front

In the center console.

Rear

General information

The cup holder is located in the center armrest.



Pull the center armrest forward at the strap.

To open: press the button.

To close: push both covers back in, one after the other.

Safety information

NOTE

With an open cup holder, the center armrest cannot be folded back up. There is a risk of damage to property. Press back the covers before the center armrest is folded up.◀

CLOTHES HOOKS

General information

The clothes hooks are located above the rear doors.

Safety information

WARNING

Clothing articles on the clothes hooks can obstruct the view while driving. There is a risk of an accident. When suspending clothing articles from the clothes hooks, ensure that they will not obstruct the driver's view.◀

WARNING

Improper use of the clothes hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only hang lightweight objects, for instance clothing articles, from the clothes hooks.◀

CARGO AREA

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

LOADING

Safety information

WARNING

High gross weight can overheat the tires, damage them internally and cause a sudden drop in tire inflation pressure. Driving characteristics may be negatively impacted, reducing lane stability, lengthening the braking distances and changing the steering response. There is a risk of an accident. Pay attention to the permitted load capacity of the tires and never exceed the permitted gross weight.◀

WARNING

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, for instance mobile phones, can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the car's interior.◀

WARNING

Improperly stowed objects can shift and be thrown into the car's interior, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. Vehicle occupants can be hit and injured. There is a risk of injury. Stow and secure objects and cargo properly.◀

NOTE

Fluids in the cargo area can cause damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo area.◀

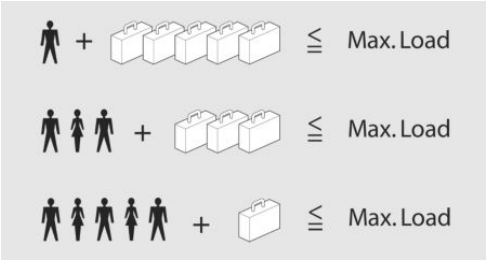
Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs.” on your vehicle’s placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1,400–750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Load



The maximum load is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

Stowing and securing cargo

- ▷ Cover sharp edges and corners on the cargo.
- ▷ Heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear passenger seat backrests.
- ▷ Very heavy cargo: when the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer safety belts in the opposite buckle.
- ▷ If necessary, fold down the rear backrests to stow cargo.
- ▷ Do not stack cargo above the top edge of the backrests.
- ▷ Small and light cargo: secure with ratchet straps or draw straps.
- ▷ Larger and heavy cargo: secure with cargo straps.

LASHING EYES IN THE CARGO AREA

With storage compartment package: to secure the cargo there are four lashing eyes in the cargo area.

Attach load securing aids, such as lashing straps, retaining straps, draw straps or cargo nets, to the lashing eyes in the cargo area.

CARGO COVER

General information

When the tailgate is opened, the cargo cover is raised.

Safety information

WARNING

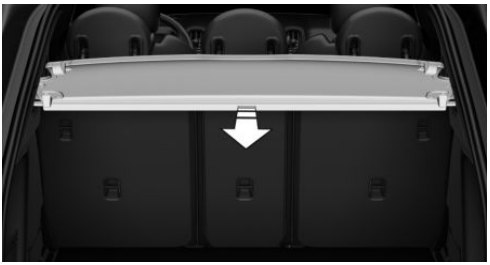
Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, for instance mobile phones, can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the car's interior.◀

Removing

For storing bulky objects the cargo cover can be removed.

1. Detach the left and right retaining straps at the tailgate.

2. Pull the cargo cover out of the brackets on the left and right.



Installing

1. Slide the cargo cover forward horizontally into the two side brackets until it audibly engages.
2. Attach the left and right retaining straps at the tailgate.

STORAGE COMPARTMENTS IN THE CARGO AREA

Storage compartment on the side

A storage compartment is located on the left side.

Multi-function hook

WARNING

Improper use of the multi-function hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers, for example. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only hang lightweight objects, such as shopping bags, from the multi-function hooks. Only transport heavy luggage in the cargo area if it has been appropriately secured.◀

The cargo area contains two multi-function hooks.

ENLARGING THE CARGO AREA

Concept

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the cargo area can be enlarged as follows:

▷ The rear seat backrests can be folded down.

▷ The rear seat backrests can be moved into an upright loading position using the cargo setting.

General information

The rear seat backrest is divided at a ratio of 40–20–40. The side rear seat backrests and the center section can be folded down separately.

The rear seat backrests can be folded down from the rear.

Safety information

WARNING

Danger of jamming with folding down the backrests. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest and the of the head restraint is clear prior to folding down.◀

WARNING

If a rear seat backrest is not locked, unsecured cargo can be thrown into the car's interior; for instance, in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the rear seat backrest is locked after folding it back.◀

WARNING

Unexpected movements of the backrest while driving may occur due to unintentional unlocking of the rear backrests by the straps. There is a risk of injury. Do not fasten any objects to the straps for unlocking the rear backrests.◀

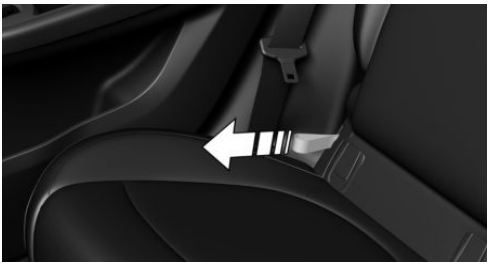
WARNING

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.◀

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.◀

Folding down the rear seat backrest from the rear



Pull the strap forward. The rear seat backrest folds forward.

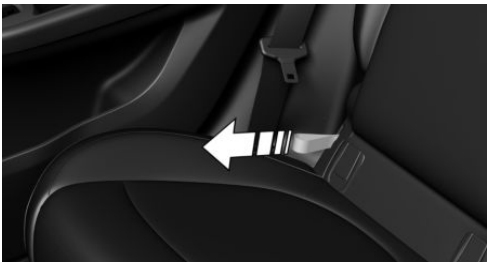
Cargo position

Concept

The rear seat backrests can be separately moved through several tilt stages into an upright loading position.

Settings

1. Pull the strap.

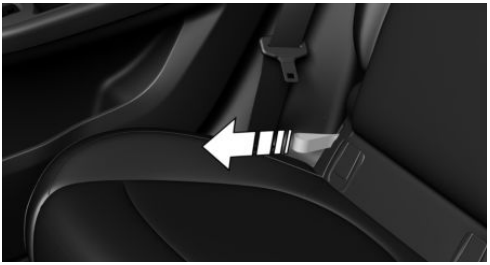


2. Set the loading position of the rear seat backrest as required.
3. Latch the rear seat backrest.

Fold back the backrest

Without a cargo position:

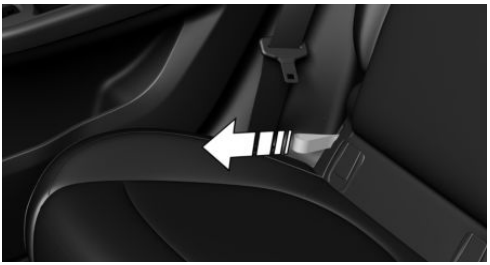
1. Pull the strap.



2. Fold the rear seat backrest rearward.

With a cargo position:

1. Pull the strap.



2. Fold the rear seat backrest rearward. The rear seat backrest first engages in the loading position.
3. Pull the strap again.
4. Fold rear seat backrest all the way back.
5. Latch the rear seat backrest.

VARIABLE CARGO AREA FLOOR

Concept

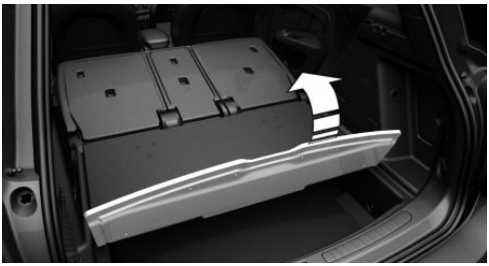
With the variable cargo area floor, the cargo area can be configured corresponding to transport requirements.

General information

Follow instructions on securing cargo, refer to page 194.

Removing the cargo floor panel

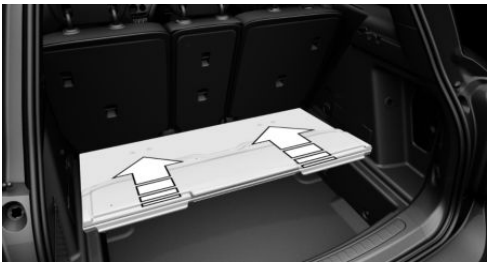
1. Fold down the rear seat backrest, refer to page 196.
2. Fold the rear part of the cargo floor panel upward.



3. Grasp the cargo floor panel in the rear and fold up above the locking point of the upper position, refer to page 199.
4. Pull the cargo floor panel backward from the brackets.

Inserting the cargo floor panel

1. Push the cargo area floor into the supports at a shallow angle. The cargo area floor must engage noticeably.



2. Fold the cargo area floor over downward.

Folded up position

Safety information

WARNING

Improper use of the variable cargo floor panel can lead to a danger of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property.

- ▷ Do not use the variable cargo floor panel to separate the cargo area and car's interior in the sense of a partition net.
- ▷ Only use the variable cargo floor panel in the folded-up position when the backrests are folded up and locked.
- ▷ Fold down the variable cargo floor panel before driving off.
- ▷ Always secure cargo against shifting, using straps, belts and lashing eyes, for instance.◀

Fold up the cargo floor panel

Fold the rear part of the cargo floor panel upward.

Fold up the cargo floor panel. You've reached the maximum cargo height.

MINI PICNIC BENCH

Concept

The MINI Picnic Bench provides a comfortable seating surface on the loading lip of the vehicle.

General information

Only use the MINI Picnic Bench while the vehicle is parked and with the tailgate open. When the MINI Picnic Bench is not in use, fold it together to prevent soiling and damage.

In vehicles with a no-touch opening and closing tailgate:

If the remote control is in the sensor area, the tailgate can be opened or closed inadvertently by an unconscious or alleged recognized foot movement.

The sensor has an approximate range of 5 ft/1.50 m extending from the rear of the vehicle.

Safety information

WARNING

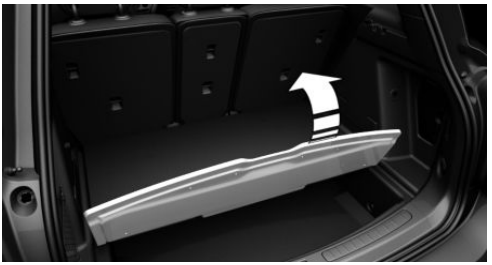
Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◀

Overview

The MINI Picnic Bench is located on the underside of the cargo area floor.

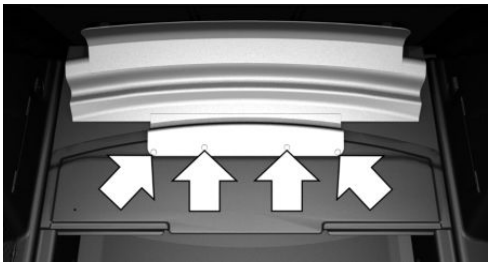
Mounting

1. Fold the rear part of the cargo floor panel upward.

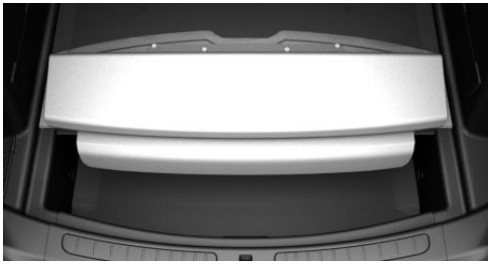


2. Place the MINI Picnic Bench on the front part of the cargo floor panel and attach it to

the rear part of the cargo floor panel using the four snaps.



3. Fold down the MINI Picnic Bench toward the rear. The MINI Picnic Bench is fastened with magnets.

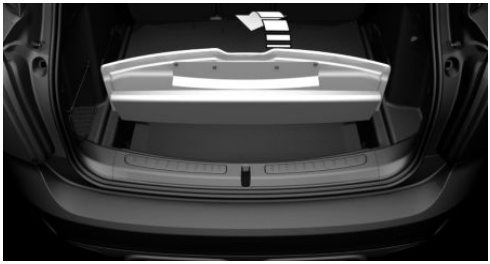


4. Fold the rear part of the cargo area floor downward.

To disassemble the MINI Picnic Bench, proceed in reverse order.

Folding down

1. Lift the rear part of the cargo area floor.



2. Grasp the MINI Picnic Bench in the middle and pull it back and up against the force of the magnets.

3. Fold the rear part of the cargo area floor downward and place the MINI Picnic Bench over the loading lip of the cargo area. Place a protective cloth over the bumper.

Folding up

Fold rear part of the cargo floor panel upward.

The MINI Picnic Bench swings against the underside of the cargo area floor and is fastened there with magnets.

DRIVE ME.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

AT A GLANCE

CONTROLS

DRIVING TIPS

MOBILITY

REFERENCE

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

THINGS TO REMEMBER WHEN DRIVING

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

BREAKING-IN PERIOD

General information

Moving parts need to begin working together smoothly.

The following instructions will help you to achieve a long vehicle life and good efficiency.

During break-in, do not use the Launch Control, refer to page 107.

Safety information

WARNING

Due to new parts and components, safety and driver assistance systems can react with a delay. There is a risk of an accident. After installing new parts or with a new vehicle, drive conservatively and intervene early if necessary. Observe the break-in procedures of the respective parts and components.◀

Engine, transmission, and axle drive

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Do not exceed the maximum engine and road speed:

▷ For gasoline engine 4,500 rpm and 100 mph/160 km/h.

Avoid full load or kickdown under all circumstances.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km

The engine and vehicle speed can gradually be increased.

Tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brake discs and brake pads only reach their full effectiveness after approx. 300 miles/500 km. Drive moderately during this break-in period.

Clutch

The function of the clutch reaches its optimal level only after a distance driven of approx. 300 miles/500 km. During this break-in period, engage the clutch gently.

Following part replacement

The same break-in procedures should be observed if any of the components above-mentioned have to be renewed in the course of the vehicle's operating life.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

GENERAL DRIVING NOTES

Closing the tailgate

Safety information

WARNING

An open tailgate protrudes from the vehicle and can endanger occupants and other traffic participants or damage the vehicle in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. In addition, exhaust fumes may enter the car's interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not drive with the tailgate open.◀

Driving with the tailgate open

If driving with the tailgate open cannot be avoided:

- ▷ Close all windows and the glass sunroof.
- ▷ Greatly increase the air flow from the vents.
- ▷ Drive moderately.

Hot exhaust gas system

WARNING

During driving operation, high temperatures can occur underneath the vehicle body, for instance caused by the exhaust gas system. If combustible materials, such as leaves or grass, come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust gas system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts in driving operation, idle or during parking. Do not touch the hot exhaust gas system.◀

Mobile communication devices in the vehicle

WARNING

Vehicle electronics and mobile phones can influence one another. There is radiation due to the transmission operations of mobile phones. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. If possible, in the car's interior use only mobile phones with direct connections to an exterior antenna in order to exclude mutual interference and deflect the radiation from the car's interior.◀

Hydroplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tires and road surface.

This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning. It is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.

Driving through water

General information

When driving through water, follow the following:

- ▷ Drive through calm water only.
- ▷ Drive through water only if it is not deeper than maximum 9.8 inches/25 cm.
- ▷ Drive through water no faster than walking speed, up to 3 mph/5 km/h.

Safety information

NOTE

When driving too quickly through too deep water, water can enter into the engine compartment, the electrical system or the transmission. There is a risk of damage to property. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum indicated water level and the maximum speed for driving through water.◀

Braking safely

General information

The vehicle is equipped with ABS as a standard feature.

Perform an emergency stop in situations that require such.

Steering is still responsive. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

Pulsation of the brake pedal and sounds from the hydraulic circuits indicate that ABS is in its active mode.

Objects in the area around the pedals

WARNING

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of an accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.◀

Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet, salted, or in heavy rain, gently press the brake pedal every few miles.

Ensure that this action does not endanger other traffic.

The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

In this way braking efficiency will be available when you need it.

Hills

General information

Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear that requires least braking effort. Otherwise, the brakes may overheat and reduce brake efficiency.

You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down, going all the way to first gear, if needed.

Safety information

WARNING

Light but consistent brake pressure can lead to high temperatures, brakes wearing out and possibly even brake failure. There is a risk of an accident. Avoid placing excessive stress on the brake system.◀

WARNING

In idle state or with the engine switched off, safety-relevant functions, for instance engine braking effect, braking force boost and steering assistance, are restricted or not available at all. There is a risk of an accident. Do not drive in idle state or with the engine switched off.◀

Brake disc corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and contamination on the brake pads are increased by the following circumstances:

- ▷ Low mileage.
- ▷ Extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all.
- ▷ Infrequent use of the brakes.
- ▷ Aggressive, acidic, or alkaline cleaning agents.

Corrosion buildup on the brake discs will cause a pulsating effect on the brakes in their response - generally this cannot be corrected.

Condensation water under the parked vehicle

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops and collects underneath the vehicle.

Ground clearance

NOTE

If ground clearance is insufficient, there might be contact with the front or rear spoiler, for instance when driving over curbs or entering into underground vehicle parking garages. There is a risk of damage to property. Ensure that there is sufficient ground clearance available.◂

ROOF-MOUNTED LUGGAGE RACK

General information

Installation only possible with roof rack.

Roof racks are available as special accessories.

Securing

Follow the installation instructions of the roof rack.

Loading

Because roof-mounted luggage racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.

Therefore, note the following when loading and driving:

- ▷ Do not exceed the approved roof/axle loads and the approved gross vehicle weight.
- ▷ Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.
- ▷ Distribute the roof load uniformly.
- ▷ The roof load should not extend past the loading area.
- ▷ Always place the heaviest pieces on the bottom.
- ▷ Secure the roof luggage firmly, for instance using ratchet straps.
- ▷ Do not let objects project into the opening path of the tailgate.
- ▷ Drive cautiously and avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

DRIVING ON POOR ROADS

Concept

Because of its greater ground clearance, the vehicle can be driven on a variety of road types and qualities.

All-wheel drive can help improve forward momentum.

Safety information

NOTE

Objects in unpaved areas, for instance stones or branches, can damage the vehicle. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not drive on unpaved terrain.◂

When driving on poor roads

For your own safety, for the safety of passengers and of the vehicle, heed the following points:

- ▷ Become familiar with the vehicle before starting a trip; do not take risks while driving.
- ▷ Adjust the speed to the road surface conditions. The steeper and more uneven the road surface, the slower the speed.
- ▷ When driving on steep uphill or downhill grades: add engine oil and coolant up to near the MAX mark.

- ▷ Avoid that the chassis bottom coming in contact with the ground. The ground clearance may vary depending on the vehicle load.
- ▷ When wheels continue to spin, depress the accelerator so that driving stability control systems can distribute the driving force to the wheels. Activate DTC Dynamic Traction Control if available.

After a trip on poor roads

Note the following to maintain driving safety:

- ▷ Clear heavy soiling from the body.
- ▷ Keep the wheels and tires free of mud, snow, ice, etc., and check them for damage.

DRIVING ON RACETRACKS

Higher mechanical and thermal loads during racetrack operation lead to increased wear. This wear is not covered by the warranty. The vehicle is not designed for use in motor sports competition.

SAVING FUEL

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

GENERAL INFORMATION

The vehicle contains advanced technologies for the reduction of fuel consumption and emission values.

Fuel consumption depends on a number of different factors.

The implementation of certain measures, driving style and regular maintenance can influence fuel consumption and environmental impact.

REMOVE UNNECESSARY CARGO

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

REMOVE ATTACHED PARTS FOLLOWING USE

Remove auxiliary mirrors, roof-mounted or rear luggage racks which are no longer required following use.

Attached parts on the vehicle impair the aerodynamics and increase the fuel consumption.

CLOSE THE WINDOWS AND GLASS SUNROOF

Driving with the glass sunroof and windows open results in increased air resistance and raises fuel consumption.

TIRES

General information

Tires can affect fuel consumption in various ways, for instance tire size may influence fuel consumption.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly

Check and, if needed, correct the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before starting on a long trip.

Low tire inflation pressure increases rolling resistance and thus raises fuel consumption and tire wear.

DRIVE AWAY WITHOUT DELAY

Do not wait for the engine to warm-up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate engine speeds.

This is the fastest way for the cold engine to reach its operating temperature.

LOOK WELL AHEAD WHEN DRIVING

Driving smoothly and proactively reduces fuel consumption.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

By maintaining a suitable distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you.

AVOID HIGH ENGINE SPEEDS

Driving at low engine speeds lowers fuel consumption and reduces wear.

If necessary, observe the vehicle's gear shift indicator, refer to page 116.

USE COASTING CONDITIONS

When approaching a red light, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle coast to a halt.

For going downhill take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle roll.

The flow of fuel is interrupted while coasting.

SWITCH OFF THE ENGINE DURING LONGER STOPS

Switching off the engine

Switch off the engine during longer stops, for instance at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic congestion.

Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function of the vehicle automatically switches off the engine during a stop.

If the engine is switched off and then restarted rather than leaving the engine running constantly, fuel consumption and emissions are reduced. Savings can begin within a few seconds of switching off the engine.

In addition, fuel consumption is also determined by other factors, such as driving style, road conditions, maintenance or environmental factors.

SWITCH OFF ANY FUNCTIONS THAT ARE NOT CURRENTLY NEEDED

Functions such as seat heating and the rear window defroster require a lot of energy and consume additional fuel, especially in city and stop-and-go traffic.

Switch off these functions if they are not needed.

HAVE MAINTENANCE CARRIED OUT

Have the vehicle maintained regularly to achieve optimal vehicle efficiency and service life. MINI recommends that maintenance work be performed by a MINI service center.

Also note the MINI maintenance systems, refer to page 249.

GREEN MODE

Concept

GREEN Mode supports a driving style that saves on fuel consumption. For this purpose, the engine control and comfort features, for instance the climate control output, are adjusted.

For Steptronic transmission:

Under certain conditions the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission in the D selector lever position. The vehicle continues traveling with the engine idling to reduce fuel consumption. The D selector lever position remains engaged.

In addition, context-sensitive instructions are displayed to assist with an optimized fuel consumption driving style.

The achieved extended range is displayed in the instrument cluster as bonus range.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

General information

The system includes the following MINIMALISM functions and MINIMALISM displays:

- ▷ GREEN bonus range, refer to page 211.
- ▷ GREEN tip, driving instruction, refer to page 212.
- ▷ GREEN climate control, refer to page 211.
- ▷ MINIMALISM analyzer, refer to page 214.
- ▷ Coasting driving condition, refer to page 213.

Activating GREEN Mode

Press the MINI Driving Modes switch downward until GREEN is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Configuring GREEN

Via MINI Driving Modes switch

1. Activating GREEN Mode.
2. "Configure GREEN"
3. Select the desired setting.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. If necessary, "Driving mode"
4. "Configure GREEN"
5. Select the desired setting.

Activating/deactivating the functions

The following functions can be activated/deactivated:

- ▷ "GREEN speed warning":
- ▷ "GREEN climate control"

Settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

GREEN Limit

- ▷ Activate the GREEN Limit:

  "GREEN speed warning":

  A GREEN tip is displayed if the speed of the set GREEN Limit is exceeded.
- ▷ Setting the speed for the GREEN Limit:

  "Tip at:"

  Select the desired speed.

GREEN climate control

Climate control is set to be fuel-efficient.

By making a slight change to the set temperature, or adjusting the rate of heating or cooling of the car's interior fuel consumption can be economized.

The power output to the seat heater and exterior mirror is reduced.

Coasting

Fuel-efficiency can be optimized by disengaging the engine and coasting, refer to page 213, with the engine idling.

This function is only available in GREEN Mode.

Deactivate the function to use the braking effect of the engine when traveling downhill.

GREEN potential savings

Shows potential savings with the current settings in percentages.

Display in the instrument cluster

GREEN bonus range

A modified driving style helps you extend your driving range.

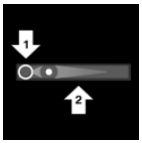
This may be displayed as the bonus range in the instrument cluster.

The bonus range is shown in the range display.

The bonus range is automatically reset every time the vehicle is refueled.

- ▷ Green display: efficient driving style.
- ▷ Gray display: modify driving style, for instance by backing off the accelerator pedal.

Efficiency display



A bar display in the instrument cluster indicates your current driving efficiency.

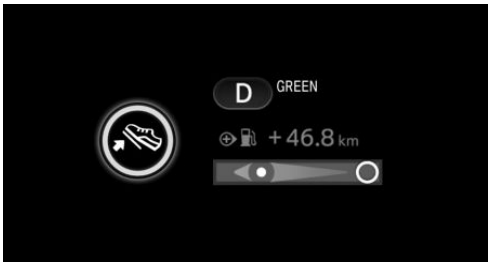
Mark in the left area, arrow 1: display for energy recovered by coasting or when braking.

Mark in the right area, arrow 2: display when accelerating.

The efficiency of your driving style is shown by the position of the mark:

- ▷ Mark inside the green range: efficient driving style.
- ▷ Mark outside the green range: modify driving style, for example by backing off the accelerator.

GREEN tip, driving instruction



The GREEN tip indicates that your driving style can be modified to be more fuel efficient, for example by backing off the accelerator.

Activating the efficiency display and GREEN tips

The efficiency display and GREEN tips appear in the instrument cluster when GREEN Info is activated.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. "GREEN info"

GREEN tip, symbols

An additional symbol and text instructions are displayed.

Symbol	Measure
	For an efficient driving style, look well ahead when driving, accelerate conservatively, and delay accelerating.
km/h	Reduce speed to the selected GREEN speed.
D	Steptronic transmission: Switch from M/S to D and avoid manual shift interventions.
	Manual transmission: Follow the shift instructions.
N	Manual transmission: Engage neutral for an engine stop.

Indications on the Control Display

Displaying MINIMALISM information

The current efficiency of the functions in GREEN Mode can be displayed on the Control Display.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "MINIMALISM"

Information is shown on the following functions:

- ▷ Auto Start/Stop function.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

- ▷ Energy recovery.
- ▷ Climate control output.
- ▷ Coasting.

Displaying the MINIMALISM analyzer

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "MINIMALISM Analyser"

Further information on the MINIMALISM analyzer, refer to page 214.

Coasting

Concept

The function helps to conserve fuel.

To do this, under certain conditions the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission when selector lever position D is set. The vehicle continues traveling with the engine idling to reduce fuel consumption. Selector lever position D remains engaged.

This driving condition is referred to as coasting.

As soon as you step on the brake or accelerator pedal, the engine is automatically coupled again.

General information

Coasting is a component of the GREEN driving mode.

Coasting is automatically activated when the GREEN driving mode is called via the MINI Driving Modes switch, refer to page 155.

A proactive driving style helps the driver to use the function often and supports the fuel-conserving effect of coasting.

Functional requirements

In GREEN mode, this function is available in a speed range from approximately
30 mph/50 km/h to 100 mph/160 km/h if the following conditions are met:

- ▷ Accelerator pedal and brake pedal are not operated.
- ▷ The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- ▷ Engine and transmission are at operating temperature.

Operation via shift paddles

Concept

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the coasting mode can be influenced with the shift paddles.

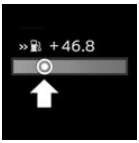
Activating/deactivating coasting via shift paddles

1. Shift to the highest gear by pulling the right shift paddle.
2. To activate coasting mode, actuate the right shift paddle again.

To deactivate, actuate the left shift paddle.

Display

Display in the instrument cluster



The bar display below the tachometer is filled in green and the mark appears at the zero point. The tachometer shows the idle speed.

Indications on the Control Display

The coasting driving condition is displayed in the MINIMALISM Info while driving.

The distance traveled in the coasting driving condition is indicated by a counter.

Displaying MINIMALISM information

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "MINIMALISM"

System limits

The function is not available if one of the following conditions applies:

- ▷ DSC OFF and TRACTION are activated.
- ▷ Cruise control is activated.
- ▷ If driving in the dynamic limit range.
- ▷ If driving on steep uphill or downhill grades.
- ▷ The battery charge state is temporarily too low.
- ▷ The vehicle electrical system is drawing excessive current.

MINIMALISM analyzer

Concept

The function helps develop an especially efficient driving style and to conserve fuel.

For this purpose, the driving style is analyzed. The assessment is done in various categories and is displayed on the Control Display.

This display will help you adjust your driving style and save some fuel.

The last 15 minutes of a trip are evaluated.

The range of the vehicle can be extended by adopting an efficient driving style. This gain in range is displayed as a bonus range in the instrument cluster and on the Control Display.

Functional requirement

This function is available in GREEN Mode.

Displaying the MINIMALISM analyzer

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "MINIMALISM Analyser"

Display on the Control Display

The display of the MINIMALISM analyzer consists of a fish in a water glass, a table of values and the display of the achieved bonus range.

The fish and the movements of the water in the bowl symbolize the efficiency of the driving style.

The more efficient the driving style, the less the water sloshes around in the bowl and the better is the fish's mood. If the driving style is inefficient, the water oscillates, the fish's mood worsens, and a reduced number of stars is displayed.

The table of values contains stars and evaluates the driving style in different categories. The more efficient the driving style, the more stars are displayed in the table.

The bonus range achieved by a driving style that minimizes fuel consumption is displayed below the table of values. The more efficient the driving style, the faster the bonus range increases.

To assist with an efficient driving style, GREEN tips are displayed while driving.

Tips for an energy-saving driving style, Saving fuel, refer to page 209.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

MOVE ME.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

AT A GLANCE

CONTROLS

DRIVING TIPS

MOBILITY

REFERENCE

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

REFUELING

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

GENERAL INFORMATION

Follow the fuel recommendation, refer to page 220, prior to refueling.

SAFETY INFORMATION

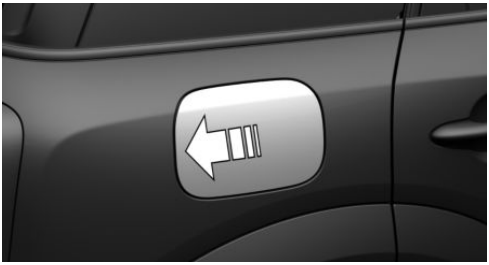
NOTE

With a driving range of less than 30 miles/50 km the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of damage to property. Refuel promptly.◄

FUEL CAP

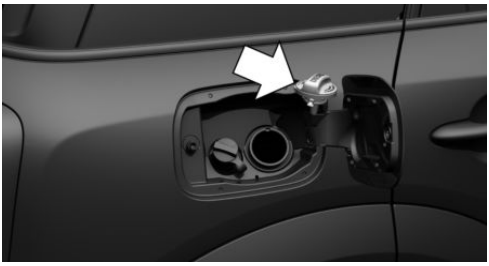
Opening

1. Briefly press the rear edge of the fuel filler flap.



2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.

3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.



Closing

WARNING

The retaining strap of the fuel cap can be jammed and crushed during closing. The cap cannot be correctly closed. Fuel or fuel vapors can escape. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Pay attention that the retaining strap is not jammed or crushed when closing the cap.◀

1. Fit the cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.
2. Close the fuel filler flap.

Manually unlocking fuel filler flap

E.g., in the event of an electrical malfunction.

Have fuel filler flap unlocked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

FOLLOW THE FOLLOWING WHEN REFUELING

General information

When refueling, insert the filler nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Lifting up the fuel pump nozzle during refueling causes:

- ▷ Premature switching off.
- ▷ Reduced return of the fuel vapors.

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Follow safety regulations posted at the gas station.

Safety information

NOTE

Fuels are toxic and aggressive. Overfilling of the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. Painted surfaces may be damaged by contact with fuel. Escaping fuel can harm the environment. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid overfilling.◀

FUEL

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

FUEL RECOMMENDATION

General information

Depending on the region, many gas stations sell fuel that has been customized to winter or summer conditions. Fuel that is available in winter, for instance helps make a cold start easier.

Gasoline

General information

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 25 %, i. e. E10 or E25, may be used for refueling.

Ethanol should meet the following quality standards:

US: ASTM 4806–xx

CAN: CGSB-3.511–xx

xx: comply with the current standard in each case.

Safety information

NOTE

Do not press the Start/Stop button after refueling with the wrong fuel. Furthermore, the catalytic converter is permanently damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not refuel or add the following in the case of gasoline engines:

- ▷ Leaded gasoline.
- ▷ Metallic additives, for instance manganese or iron.

Do not press the Start/Stop button after refueling with the wrong fuel. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

NOTE

Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use fuels with a higher percentage of ethanol than recommended. Do not refuel with fuels containing methanol, e.g. M5 to M100.◀

NOTE

Fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality can compromise engine function or cause engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not fill with fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality.◀

CAUTION

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in harmful engine deposits or damage. Additionally, problems relating to drivability, starting and stalling, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude, may occur.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

If drivability problems are encountered, we recommend switching to a high quality gasoline brand and a higher octane grade — AKI number — for a few tank fills. To avoid harmful engine deposits, it is highly recommended to purchase gasoline from Top Tier retailers.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in the need for unscheduled maintenance.◀

Recommended fuel grade

MINI recommends AKI 91.

John Cooper Works:

Refuel with this gasoline to achieve the rated performance and consumption values.

Minimum fuel grade

MINI recommends AKI 89.

John Cooper Works:

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high external temperatures. This has no effect on the engine life.

WHEELS AND TIRES

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

TIRE INFLATION PRESSURE

General information

The tire characteristics and tire inflation pressure influence the following:

- ▷ The service life of the tires.
- ▷ Road safety.
- ▷ Driving comfort.
- ▷ Fuel consumption.

Safety information

WARNING

A tire with too little or no tire inflation pressure may heat up significantly and sustain damage. This will have a negative impact on aspects of handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of an accident. Regularly check the tire inflation pressure, and correct it as needed, for instance twice a month and before a long trip.◀

Tire inflation pressure specifications

In the tire inflation pressure table

The tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 223, contains all tire inflation pressure specifications for the specified tire sizes at the ambient temperature. The tire inflation pressure values apply to tire sizes approved by the manufacturer of the vehicle for the vehicle type.

To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:

- ▷ Tire sizes of your vehicle.
- ▷ Maximum permitted driving speed.

Checking the tire inflation pressure

General information

Tires heat up while driving. The tire inflation pressure increases with the tire temperature.

Tires have a natural, consistent loss of tire inflation pressure.

The displays of inflation devices may underread by up to 0.1 bar/2 psi.

Checking using tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table

The tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table only relate to cold tires or tires at the same temperature as the ambient temperature.

Only check the tire inflation pressure levels when the tires are cold, i.e.:

- ▷ Driving range of max. 1.25 miles/2 km has not been exceeded.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

▷ If the vehicle has not moved again for at least 2 hours after a trip.

1. Determine, refer to page 222, the intended tire inflation pressure levels for the mounted tires.
2. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, using a pressure gage, for example.
3. Correct the tire inflation pressure if the current tire inflation pressure value deviates from the specified value.
4. Check whether all valve caps are screwed onto the tire valves.

After correcting the tire inflation pressure

For run-flat tires: reinitialize run-flat tires.

For the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM: reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM.

Checking the tire inflation pressure of the emergency wheel

Also check the tire inflation pressure of the emergency wheel in the cargo area regularly, and correct it as needed.

Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/160 km/h

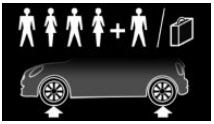
For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 223, and adjust as necessary.

These pressure values can also be found on the tire inflation pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

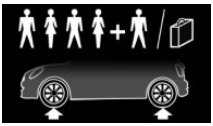
Do not exceed a speed of 100 mph/160 km/h.

Tire inflation pressure values up to 100 mph/160 km/h

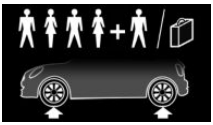
COOPER, COOPER ALL4

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
225/55 R 17 97 W Std/RSC 225/55 R 17 97 H M+S A/S Std 225/55 R 17 97 H M+S Std/RSC 225/50 R 18 95 W RSC 225/50 R 18 95 H M+S RSC 225/50 R 18 95 V M+S A/S Std/RSC 225/50 R 18 99 W XL Std	2.2 / 32	2.2 / 32
205/60 R 17 93 H M+S Std 225/45 R 19 92 W RSC	2.4 / 35	2.4 / 35
Emergency wheel T 115/95 R 17 95 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

COOPER S, COOPER S ALL4

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
225/55 R 17 97 H M+S Std/RSC 225/50 R 18 95 W RSC 225/50 R 18 95 H M+S RSC 225/50 R 18 95 V M+S A/S Std/RSC	2.2 / 32	2.2 / 32
205/60 R 17 93 H M+S Std	2.4 / 35	2.4 / 35
225/45 R 19 92 W RSC	2.5 / 36	2.5 / 36
Emergency wheel T 115/95 R 17 95 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

JOHN COOPER WORKS

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
205/60 R 17 93 H M+S Std 225/50 R 18 95 V M+S A/S Std/RSC 225/50 R 18 95 W RSC 225/50 R 18 95 H M+S RSC	2.4 / 35	2.4 / 35
225/45 R 19 92 W RSC	2.6 / 38	2.6 / 38

Tire inflation pressures at max. speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

WARNING

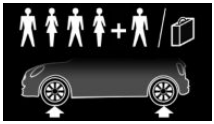
In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe, and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise, tire damage and accidents could occur.◀

For speeds over 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 225, and adjust as necessary.

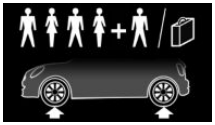
Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

Tire inflation pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h

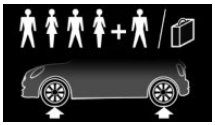
COOPER, COOPER ALL4

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
225/50 R 18 95 W RSC 225/50 R 18 95 H M+S RSC 225/50 R 18 95 V M+S A/S Std/RSC 225/50 R 18 99 W XL Std	2.4 / 35	2.4 / 35
225/55 R 17 97 W Std/RSC 225/55 R 17 97 H M+S A/S Std 225/55 R 17 97 H M+S Std/RSC	2.2 / 32	2.2 / 32
205/60 R 17 93 H M+S Std 225/45 R 19 92 W RSC	2.6 / 38	2.6 / 38
Emergency wheel T 115/95 R 17 95 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

COOPER S, COOPER S ALL4

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
205/60 R 17 93 H M+S Std 225/50 R 18 95 W RSC 225/50 R 18 95 H M+S RSC 225/50 R 18 95 V M+S A/S Std/RSC	2.8 / 41	2.8 / 41
225/55 R 17 97 H M+S Std/RSC	2.5 / 36	2.5 / 36
225/45 R 19 92 W RSC	3.0 / 44	3.0 / 44
Emergency wheel T 115/95 R 17 95 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

JOHN COOPER WORKS

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
205/60 R 17 93 H M+S Std 225/50 R 18 95 V M+S A/S Std/RSC 225/50 R 18 95 W RSC 225/50 R 18 95 H M+S RSC	2.8 / 41	2.8 / 41
225/45 R 19 92 W RSC	3.0 / 44	3.0 / 44

TIRE IDENTIFICATION MARKS

Tire size

205/45 R 17 84 V

205: nominal width in mm

45: aspect ratio in %

R: radial tire code

17: rim diameter in inches

84: load rating, not for ZR tires

V: speed rating, before the R on ZR tires

Maximum tire load

Maximum tire load is the maximum permissible weight for which the tire is approved.

Locate the maximum tire load on the tire sidewall and the Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR – on the certification label on the driver's door pillar. Divide the tire load by 1.1. It must be greater than one-half of the vehicle's Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR. Note, front vs. rear GAWR and tire loads, respectively.

Speed letter

Q = up to 100 mph/160 km/h

R = 106 mph/170 km/h

S = up to 112 mph/180 km/h

T = up to 118 mph/190 km/h

H = up to 131 mph/210 km/h

V = up to 150 mph/240 km/h

W = up to 167 mph/270 km/h

Y = up to 186 mph/300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

DOT code: DOT xxxx xxx 3817

xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand

xxx: tire size and tire design

3817: tire age

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

Tire age

Recommendation

Regardless of the tire tread, replace tires at least every 6 years.

Manufacture date

You can find the manufacture date of the tire on the tire's sidewall.

Designation	Manufacture date
DOT … 3817	38th week, 2017

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

E.g.: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Treadwear

Traction AA A B C

Temperature A B C

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. E.g., a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger vehicle tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.◂

RSC – Run-flat tires

Run-flat tires, refer to page 230, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the sidewall.

M+S

Winter and all-season tires with better cold weather performance than summer tires.

TIRE TREAD

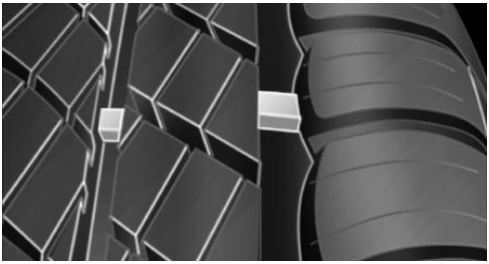
Summer tires

Do not drive with a tire tread of less than 0.12 in/3 mm, otherwise there is an increased risk of hydroplaning.

Winter tires

Do not drive with a tire tread of less than 0.16 in/4 mm, as such tires are less suitable for winter operation.

Minimum tread depth



Wear indicators are distributed around the tire's circumference and have the legally required minimum height of 0.063 inches/1.6 mm.

The positions of the wear indicators are marked on the tire sidewall with TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

TIRE DAMAGE

General information

Inspect your tires regularly for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

Driving over rough or damaged road surfaces, as well as debris, curbs and other obstacles can cause serious damage to wheels, tires and suspension parts. This is more likely to occur with low-profile tires, which provide less cushioning between the wheel and the road. Be careful to avoid road hazards and reduce your speed, especially if your vehicle is equipped with low-profile tires.

Indications of tire damage or other vehicle malfunctions:

- ▷ Unusual vibrations.
- ▷ Unusual tire or running noises.
- ▷ Unusual handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

Damage can be caused by the following situations, for instance:

- ▷ Driving over curbs.
- ▷ Road damage.
- ▷ Tire inflation pressure too low.
- ▷ Vehicle overloading.
- ▷ Incorrect tire storage.

Safety information

WARNING

Damaged tires can lose tire inflation pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is a risk of an accident. If tire damage is suspected while driving, immediately reduce speed and stop. Have wheels and tires checked. For this purpose, drive carefully to the nearest dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Have vehicle towed or transported as needed. Do not repair damaged tires, but have them replaced.◀

WARNING

Tires can become damaged by driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs or road damage, at high speed. Larger wheels have a smaller tire cross-section. The smaller the tire cross-section, the higher the risk of tire damage. There is a danger of accidents and property damage. If possible, drive around obstacles, or drive over them slowly and carefully.◀

CHANGING WHEELS AND TIRES

Mounting and wheel balancing

Have mounting and wheel balancing carried out by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wheel and tire combination

General information

You can ask the dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

about the correct wheel/tire combination and wheel rim versions for the vehicle.

Safety information

WARNING

Wheels and tires which are not suitable for your vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle, for instance due to contact with the body due to tolerances despite the same official size rating. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle strongly suggests that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type.◄

WARNING

Incorrect wheel/tire combinations will have a negative impact on the vehicle's handling and on the function of a variety of systems, such as ABS or DSC. There is a risk of an accident. To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires with a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type. Following tire damage, have the original wheel/tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.◄

Recommended tire brands

For each tire size, the manufacturer of the vehicle recommends certain tire brands. The tire brands can be identified by a star on the tire sidewall.

New tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Retreaded tires

WARNING

Retreaded tires can have different tire casing structures. With advanced age the service life can be limited. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.◄

The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

Winter tires

Winter tires are recommended for operating on winter roads.

Although so-called all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they usually do not provide the same level of performance as winter tires.

Maximum speed of winter tires

If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the permissible speed for the winter tires, then attach a label showing the permissible maximum speed in the field of view. The label is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

With winter tires mounted, observe and do not exceed the permissible maximum speed.

Run-flat tires

If you are already using run-flat tires, for your own safety you should replace them only with the same kind. No spare tire is available in the case of a flat tire. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Rotating wheels between axles

Different wear patterns can occur on the front and rear axles depending on individual driving conditions. The tires can be rotated in pairs between the axles to achieve even wear. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. After rotating, check the tire pressure and correct, if needed.

Storing tires

Air pressure

Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

Storage

Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry and dark place.

Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease, and solvents.

Do not leave tires in plastic bags.

Remove dirt from wheels or tires.

RUN-FLAT TIRES

Concept

Run-flat tires permit continued driving under restricted conditions even in the event of a complete loss of tire inflation pressure.

General information

The wheels are composed of tires that are self-supporting to a limited degree.

The support of the sidewall allows the tire to remain drivable to a restricted degree in the event of a tire inflation pressure loss.

Follow the instructions for continued driving with a flat tire.

Safety information

WARNING

Your vehicle handles differently with a run-flat with no or low inflation pressure; for instance, your lane stability when braking is reduced, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of an accident.

Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.◀

Label

The tires are marked on the tire sidewall with RSC Run-flat System Component.

REPAIRING A FLAT TIRE

Safety measures

- ▷ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- ▷ Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- ▷ If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

MOBILITY SYSTEM

Concept

With the Mobility System, minor tire damage can be sealed temporarily to enable continued travel. To accomplish this, sealant is pumped into the tires, which seals the damage from the inside.

General information

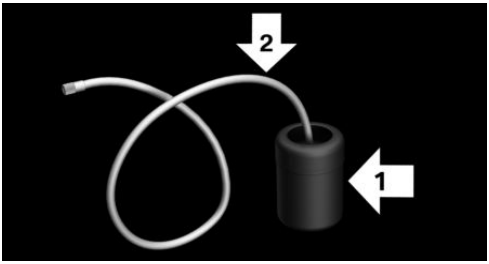
- ▷ Follow the instructions on using the Mobility System found on the compressor and sealant container.
- ▷ Use of the Mobility System may be ineffective if the tire puncture measures approx. 1/8 inches/4 mm or more.
- ▷ Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop if the tire cannot be made drivable.
- ▷ If possible, do not remove foreign bodies that have penetrated the tire. Only remove foreign objects if they are visibly protruding from the tire.
- ▷ Pull the speed limit sticker off the sealant container and apply it to the steering wheel.
- ▷ The use of a sealant can damage the TPM wheel electronics. In this case, have the TPM wheel electronics replaced at the next opportunity.
- ▷ The compressor can be used to check the tire inflation pressure.

Overview

Storage

The Mobility System is located in a bag on the right side trim in the cargo area.

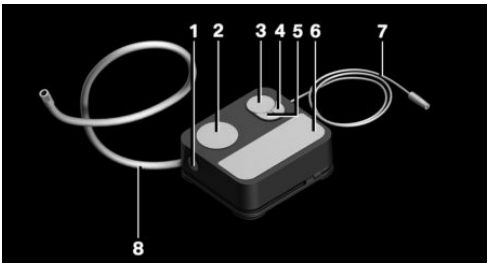
Sealant container



- ▷ Sealant container, arrow 1.
- ▷ Filling hose, arrow 2.

Observe use-by date on the sealant container.

Compressor



1 Sealant container unlocking
2 Sealant container holder
3 Tire pressure gage
4 Reduce tire inflation pressure button
5 On/off switch
6 Compressor
7 Connector/cable for socket
8 Connection hose

Safety measures

- ▷ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.

- ▷ Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- ▷ Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- ▷ If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

Filling the tire with sealant

Safety information

DANGER

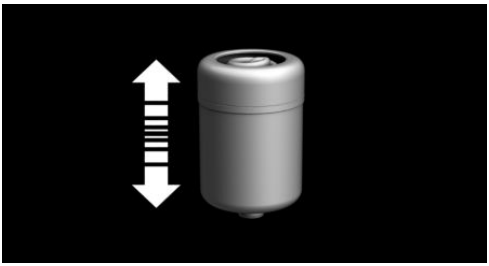
If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.◀

NOTE

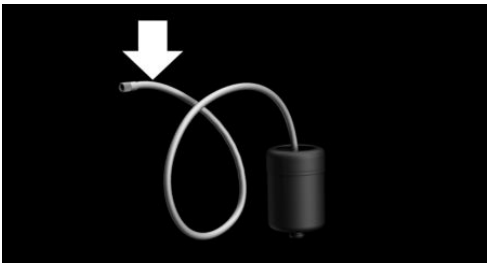
The compressor can overheat during extended operation. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not run the compressor for more than 10 minutes.◀

Filling

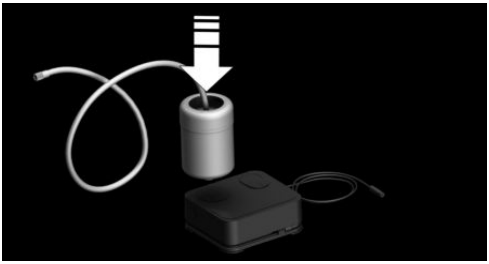
1. Shake the sealant container.



2. Pull filling hose completely out of the cover of the sealant container. Do not kink the hose.



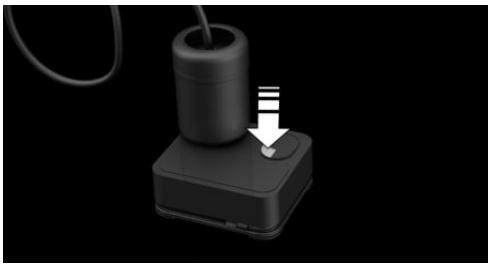
3. Slide the sealant container into the holder on the compressor housing, ensuring that it engages audibly.



4. Screw the filling hose of the sealant container onto the tire valve of the nonworking wheel.

5. With the compressor switched off, insert the plug into the power socket inside the vehicle.

6. With the ignition switched on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.



Let the compressor run for max. 10 minutes to fill the tire with sealant and achieve a tire inflation pressure of approx. 2.5 bar.

While the tire is being filled with sealant, the tire inflation pressure may sporadically reach approx. 5 bar. Do not switch off the compressor at this point.

Checking and adjusting the tire inflation pressure

Checking

1. Switch off the compressor.
2. Read the tire inflation pressure on the tire pressure gage.

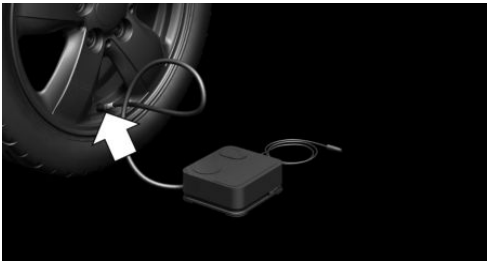
To continue the trip, a tire inflation pressure of at least 2 bar must be reached.

Removing and stowing the sealant container

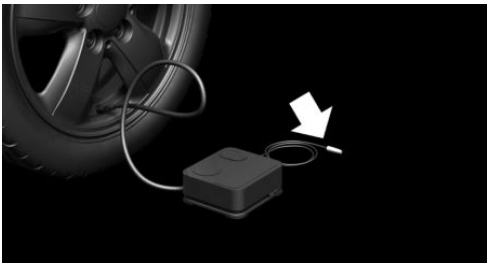
1. Unscrew the filling hose of the sealant container from the tire valve.
2. Press the red unlocking device.
3. Remove the sealant container from the compressor.
4. Wrap and store the sealant container in suitable material to avoid dirtying the cargo area.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is not reached

1. Pull the connector out of the power socket inside the vehicle.
2. Drive 33 ft/10 m forward and back to distribute the sealant in the tire.
3. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.



4. Insert the connector into the power socket inside the vehicle.



5. With the ignition switched on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.

If a tire inflation pressure of at least 2 bar cannot be reached, contact your dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

If a tire inflation pressure of at least 2 bar is reached, see Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached.

6. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
7. Pull the connector out of the power socket inside the vehicle.
8. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached

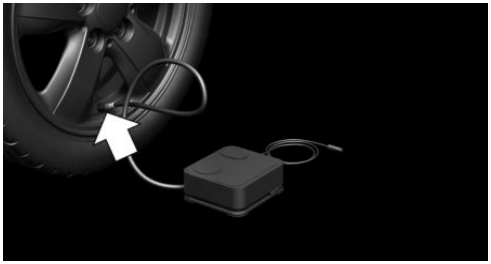
1. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
2. Pull the connector out of the power socket inside the vehicle.
3. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.
4. Immediately drive approx. 5 miles/10 km to ensure that the sealant is evenly distributed in the tire.

   Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

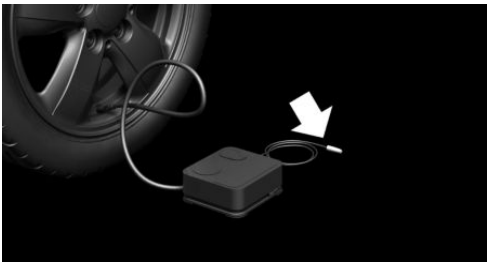
   If possible, do not drive at speeds less than 12 mph/20 km/h.

Adjustment

1. Stop at a suitable location.
2. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.



3. Insert the connector into the power socket inside the vehicle.



4. Correct the tire inflation pressure to at least 2.0 bar.
   - ▷ Increase tire inflation pressure: with the ignition switched on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.
   - ▷ Reduce tire inflation pressure: press the button on the compressor.
5. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
6. Pull the connector out of the power socket inside the vehicle.
7. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.

Continuing the trip

Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 142.

Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 137.

Replace the nonworking tire and the sealant container of the Mobility System promptly.

SNOW CHAINS

Safety information

WARNING

With the mounting of snow chains on unsuitable tires, the snow chains can come into contact with vehicle parts. There is a risk of ac-

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

cidents or risk of damage to property. Only mount snow chains on tires that are designated by their manufacturer as suitable for the use of snow chains.◀

WARNING

Insufficiently tight snow chains may damage tires and vehicle components. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tight. Re-tighten as needed according to the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.◀

Fine-link snow chains

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends use of fine-link snow chains. Certain types of fine-link snow chains have been tested by the manufacturer of the vehicle and recommended as road-safe and suitable.

Information regarding suitable snow chains is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Use

Use only in pairs on the front wheels, equipped with the tires of the following size:

- ▷ 205/65 R 16.
- ▷ 205/60 R 17.

John Cooper Works:

205/60 R 17

Follow the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Do not initialize the run-flat tires after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

Do not reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

When driving with snow chains, briefly activate Dynamic Traction Control DTC, if needed.

Maximum speed with snow chains

Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using snow chains.

CHANGING WHEELS/TIRES

General information

When using run-flat tires or a flat tire kit, a wheel does not always need to be changed immediately when there is a loss of tire inflation pressure due to a flat tire.

If needed, the tools for changing wheels are available as accessories from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

DANGER

The vehicle jack is only provided for short-term lifting of the vehicle for wheel changes. Even if all safety measures are observed, there is a risk of the raised vehicle falling, if the vehicle jack tilts over. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. If the vehicle is raised, do not lie under the vehicle and do not start the engine.◀

DANGER

Supports such as wooden blocks under the vehicle jack may prevent it from achieving its load capacity due to its restricted height. The load capacity of the wooden blocks may be exceeded, causing the vehicle to tip over. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not place supports under the vehicle jack.◀

WARNING

The jack, issued by the vehicle manufacturer, is provided in order to perform a wheel change in the event of a breakdown. The jack is not designed for frequent use; for example, changing from summer to winter tires. Using the jack frequently may cause it to become

jammed or damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only use the jack to attach an emergency or spare wheel in the event of a breakdown.◀

WARNING

On soft, uneven or slippery ground, for example snow, ice, tiles, etc., the vehicle jack can slip away. There is a risk of injury. If possible, change the wheel on a flat, solid, and slip-resistant surface.◀

WARNING

The vehicle jack is optimized for lifting the vehicle and for the jacking points on the vehicle only. There is a risk of injury. Do not lift any other vehicle or cargo using the vehicle jack.◀

WARNING

If the vehicle jack is not inserted into the jacking point provided for this purpose, the vehicle may be damaged or the vehicle jack may slip when it is being cranked up. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. When cranking up the vehicle jack, ensure that it is inserted in the jacking point next to the wheel housing.◀

WARNING

A vehicle that is raised on a vehicle jack may fall off of the jack if lateral forces are exerted on it. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. While the vehicle is raised, do not exert lateral forces on the vehicle or pull abruptly on the vehicle. Have a stuck wheel removed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

Securing the vehicle against rolling

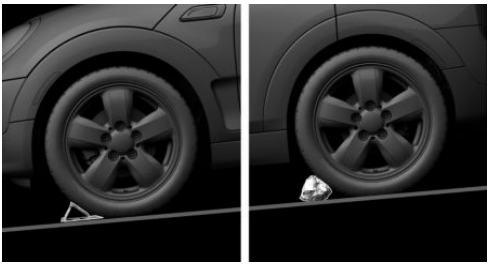
General information

The vehicle manufacturer recommends to additionally secure the vehicle against rolling away when changing a wheel.

On a level surface

Place wheel chocks or other suitable objects in front and behind the wheel that is diagonal to the wheel to be changed.

On a slight downhill gradient



If you need to change a wheel on a slight downhill grade, place chocks and other suitable objects, for instance a rock, under the wheels of both the front and rear axles against the rolling direction.

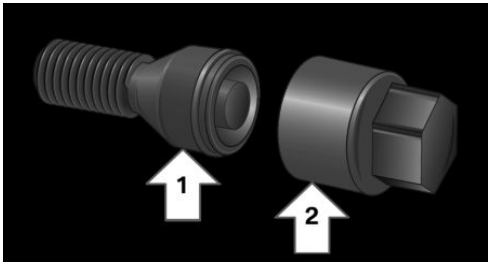
Lug bolt lock

Concept

The wheel lug bolts have a special coding. The lug bolts can only be released with the adapter which matches the coding.

Overview

The adapter of the lug bolt lock is located in the onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 251.



- ▷ Lug bolt, arrow 1.
- ▷ Adapter, arrow 2.

Unscrewing

1. Attach the adapter to the lug bolt.
2. Unscrew the lug bolt.
3. Remove the adapter after unscrewing the lug bolt.

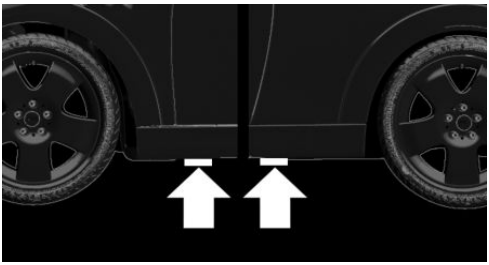
Screwing on

1. Attach the adapter to the lug bolt. If necessary, turn the adapter until it fits on the lug bolt.
2. Screw on the lug bolt. The tightening torque is 140 Nm.
3. Remove the adapter and stow it after screwing on the lug bolt.

Preparing the vehicle

- ▷ Park the vehicle on solid and non-slip ground at a safe distance from traffic.
- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ Engage a gear or move the selector lever to position P.
- ▷ As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment version, get tools and the emergency wheel from the vehicle.
- ▷ If necessary, set up a warning triangle or portable hazard warning light at an appropriate distance.
- ▷ Secure the vehicle additionally against rolling.
- ▷ Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.

Jacking points for the vehicle jack



The jacking points for the vehicle jack are located at the marked positions.

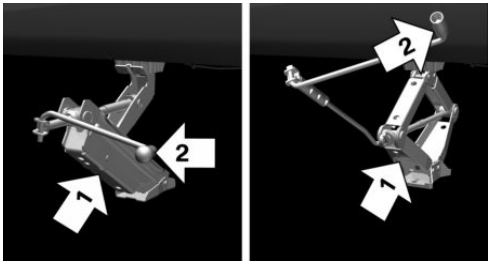
Jacking up the vehicle

WARNING

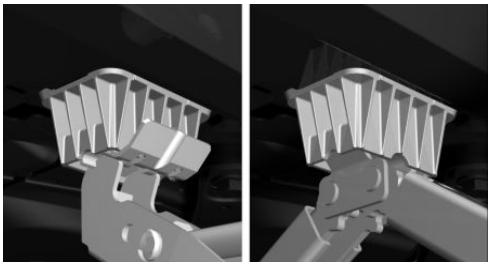
Hands and fingers can be jammed when using the vehicle jack. There is a risk of injury. Comply with the described hand position and

do not change this position while using the vehicle jack.◀

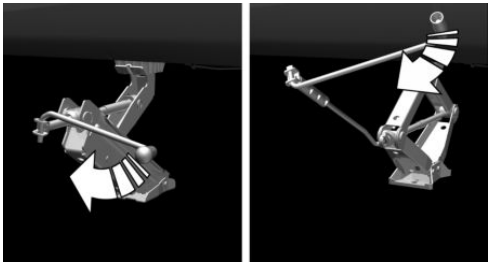
1. Hold the vehicle jack with one hand, arrow 1, and grasp the vehicle jack crank or lever with your other hand, arrow 2.



2. Insert the vehicle jack into the rectangular recess of the jacking point closest to the wheel to be changed.

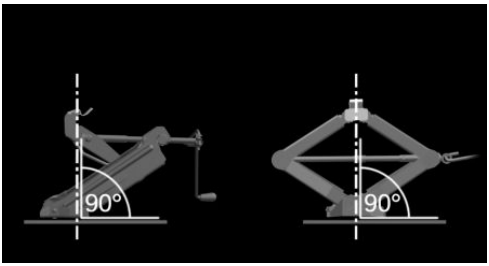


3. Extend the vehicle jack by turning the vehicle jack crank or lever clockwise.

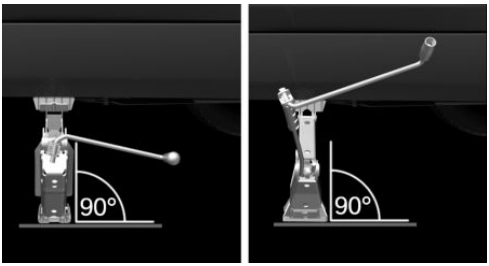


4. Take your hand away from the vehicle jack as soon as the vehicle jack is under load and continue turning the vehicle jack crank or lever with one hand.

5. Make sure that the vehicle jack foot stands vertically and at a right angle beneath the jacking point.



6. Make sure that the vehicle jack foot stands vertically and perpendicularly beneath the jacking point after extending the vehicle jack.



7. Crank up the vehicle jack until the entire surface of the jack is in contact with the ground and the wheel in question is raised a maximum of 1.2 inches/3 cm off the ground.

Mounting a wheel

Mount one emergency wheel only, as required.

1. Unscrew the lug bolts.
2. Remove the wheel.
3. Put the new wheel or emergency wheel on and screw in at least two lug bolts in a crosswise pattern until hand-tight.

   If non-original light-alloy wheels of the vehicle manufacturer are mounted, the accompanying lug bolts may have to be used as well.

4. Hand-tighten the remaining lug bolts and tighten all lug bolts well in a crosswise pattern.
5. Turn the vehicle jack crank counterclockwise to retract the vehicle jack and lower the vehicle.
6. Remove the vehicle jack and stow it securely.

After the wheel change

1. Tighten the lug bolts crosswise. The tightening torque is 101 lb ft/140 Nm.
2. Stow the nonworking wheel in the cargo area, if necessary.

   The nonworking wheel cannot be stored under the cargo floor panel because of its size.
3. Check tire inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as needed.
4. Reinitialize the run-flat tires.

   Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM.
5. Check to make sure the lug bolts are tight with a calibrated torque wrench.
6. Have the damaged tire replaced at the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

EMERGENCY WHEEL

Concept

In the event of a flat tire, the emergency wheel can be used in place of the wheel with the defective tire. The emergency wheel is only intended for temporary use until the defective tire/wheel has been replaced.

General information

Mount one emergency wheel only.

Also check the tire inflation pressure of the emergency wheel in the cargo area regularly, and correct it as needed.

Safety information

WARNING

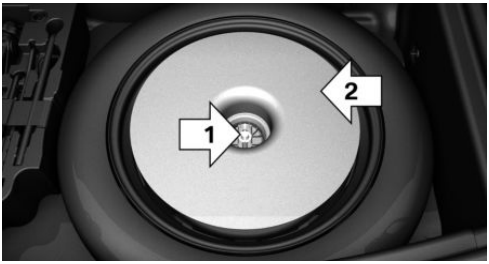
The emergency wheel has particular dimensions. When driving with an emergency wheel, changed driving properties may occur, for instance reduced lane stability when braking, longer braking distance, and changed self-steering properties in the limit area. There is a risk of an accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.◀

Overview

The emergency wheel and the wheel change tools are located in the cargo area under the cargo floor panel.

Removing the emergency wheel

1. Pull up and remove the cargo floor panel.
2. Unscrew the wing nut, arrow 1.



3. Remove the cover, arrow 2.
4. If necessary, remove the mount with the removable ball head for the trailer hitch.

5. Remove the tool holder on the left next to the emergency wheel.
6. Slide the emergency wheel to the left and remove it.

Inserting the emergency wheel

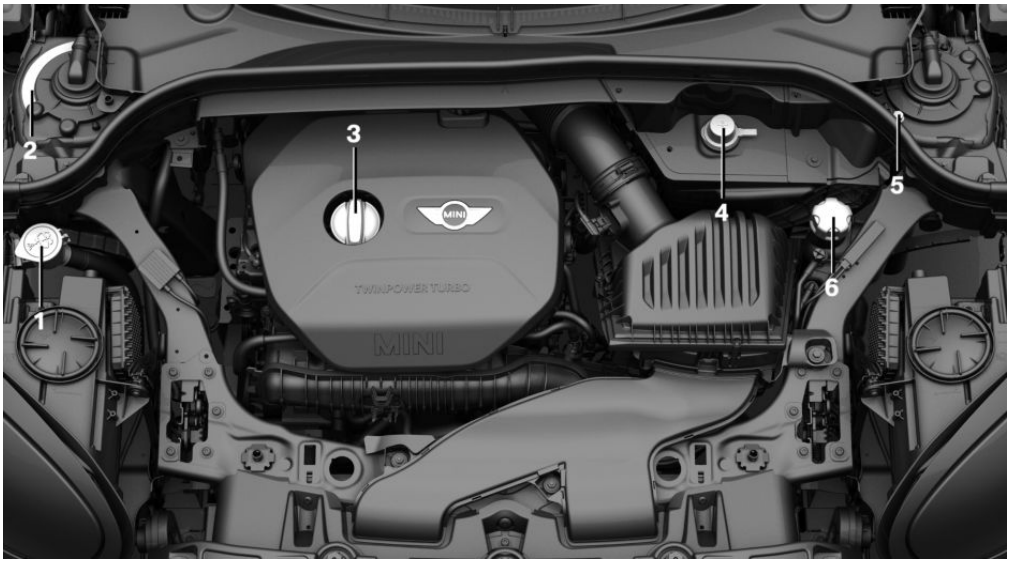
1. Insert the emergency wheel on the left and slide it to the right.
2. If necessary, insert the mount with the removable ball head for the trailer hitch.
3. Place the cover in position.
4. Screw on and tighten the wing nut.
5. Insert the cargo floor panel.

ENGINE COMPARTMENT

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

IMPORTANT FEATURES IN THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT



1 Filler neck for washer fluid
2 Vehicle identification number
3 Oil filler neck
4 Jump-starting, positive terminal
5 Jump-starting, negative terminal
6 Coolant reservoir

HOOD

Safety information

WARNING

Improperly executed work in the engine compartment can damage vehicle components and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of personal and property damage. The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that, in the effort to avoid such risks, work in the engine compartment be performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◄

WARNING

The engine compartment accommodates moving components. Certain components in the engine compartment can also move with the vehicle switched off, for instance the radiator fan. There is a risk of injury. Do not reach into the area of moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.◀

WARNING

There are protruding parts, for instance locking hook, on the inside of the hood. There is a risk of injury. If the hood is open, pay attention to protruding parts and keep clear of these areas.◀

WARNING

An incorrectly locked hood can open while driving and restrict visibility. There is a risk of an accident. Stop immediately and correctly close the hood.◀

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when opening and closing the hood. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the hood is clear during opening and closing.◀

NOTE

Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.◀

NOTE

When the hood is closed, it must engage on both sides. Pressing again can damage the hood. There is a risk of damage to property. Open the hood again and then close it energetically. Avoid pressing again.◀

Opening the hood

1. Pull lever, arrow 1.

   Hood is unlocked.

2. After the lever is released, pull the lever again, arrow 2.

   Hood can be opened.

Indicator/warning lights

When the hood is opened, a Check Control message is displayed.

Closing the hood

Let the hood fall from approx. 16 inches/40 cm, arrow.

The hood must engage on both sides.

ENGINE OIL

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

GENERAL INFORMATION

The engine oil consumption is dependent on your driving style and driving conditions.

Therefore, regularly check the engine oil level after refueling by taking a detailed measurement.

The engine oil consumption can increase in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ Sporty driving style.
- ▷ Break-in of the engine.
- ▷ Idling of the engine.
- ▷ With use of engine oil types that are classified as not suitable.

Different Check Control messages appear, depending on the engine oil level.

SAFETY INFORMATION

NOTE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Immediately add engine oil.◀

NOTE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have the engine oil level corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

ELECTRONIC OIL MEASUREMENT

General information

The electronic oil measurement has two measuring principles:

- ▷ Monitoring.
- ▷ Detailed measurement.

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a dynamic driving style, for instance when taking curves aggressively, regularly perform a detailed measurement.

Monitoring

Concept

The engine oil level is monitored electronically while driving and can be shown on the Control Display.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving.

Displaying the engine oil level

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

The engine oil level is displayed.

System limits

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a dynamic driving style, it may not be possible to calculate a measured value. In this case, the measured value for the last, sufficiently long trip is displayed.

Detailed measurement

Concept

The engine oil level is checked when the vehicle is stationary and displayed via a scale.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

General information

During the measurement, the idle speed is increased somewhat.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- ▷ Manual transmission: shift lever in neutral position, clutch and accelerator pedals not depressed.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: selector lever in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal not depressed.
- ▷ Engine is running and is at operating temperature.

Performing a detailed measurement

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"
4. "Measure engine oil level"
5. "Start measurement"

The engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

ADDING ENGINE OIL

General information

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The quantity to be added is indicated in the message displayed in the instrument cluster.

Only add suitable types of engine oil, refer to page 245.

Safely park the vehicle and switch off the ignition before adding engine oil.

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

Safety information

WARNING

Operating materials, for instance oils, greases, coolants, fuels, can contain harmful ingredients. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Follow the instructions on the containers. Avoid the contact of articles of clothing, skin or eyes with operating materials. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.◀

NOTE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Immediately add engine oil.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

NOTE

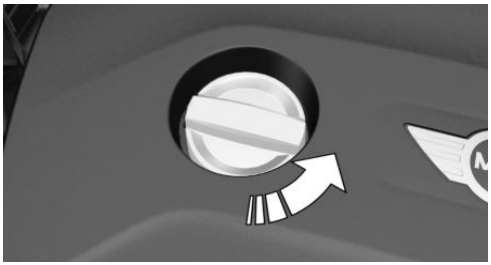
Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have the engine oil level corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

Overview

The oil filler neck is located in the engine compartment, refer to page 241.

Adding engine oil

1. Open the hood, refer to page 241.
2. Open the lid counterclockwise, arrow.



3. Add engine oil.
4. Close the cap.

ENGINE OIL TYPES TO ADD

General information

The engine oil quality is critical for the life of the engine.

Safety information

NOTE

Oil additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use oil additives.◀

NOTE

Incorrect engine oil can cause malfunctions in the engine or damage it. There is a risk of damage to property. When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the correct oil rating.◀

Suitable engine oil types

Add engine oils that meet the following oil rating standards:

Gasoline engine
BMW Longlife-01 FE.
BMW Longlife-14 FE+.

More information about suitable engine oil ratings and viscosities of engine oils can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Alternative engine oil types

If an engine oil suitable for continuous use is not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an engine oil with the following oil rating can be added:

Gasoline engine
BMW Longlife-01.
API SL, API SM, or API SN.

Viscosity grades

Gasoline engine:

When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the viscosity grade SAE 0W-30 or SAE 0W-20. The suitable viscosity grade is indicated on a label in the engine compartment.

Viscosity class SAE 0W-20 is only suitable for particular engines.

More information about suitable engine oil ratings and viscosities of engine oils can be re-

quested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

ENGINE OIL CHANGE

NOTE

Engine oil that is not changed in timely fashion can cause increased engine wear and thus engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not exceed the service data indicated in the vehicle.◂

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop change the engine oil.

MINI recommends
MINI Original Engine Oil.

COOLANT

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

GENERAL INFORMATION

Coolant consists of water and additives.

Not all commercially available additives are suitable for the vehicle. Information about suitable additives is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

SAFETY INFORMATION

WARNING

With the engine hot and the cooling system open, coolant can escape and lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury. Only open the cooling system with the engine cooled down.◂

WARNING

Additives are harmful and incorrect additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Do not allow additives to come into contact with skin, eyes or articles of clothing. Use suitable additives only.◂

COOLANT LEVEL

Overview

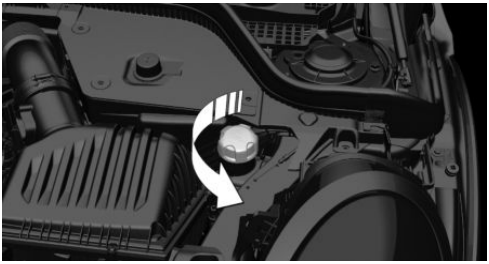
The coolant reservoir is in the engine compartment, refer to page 241.

Open the hood, refer to page 241.

Checking

There are yellow Min and Max marks in the coolant reservoir.

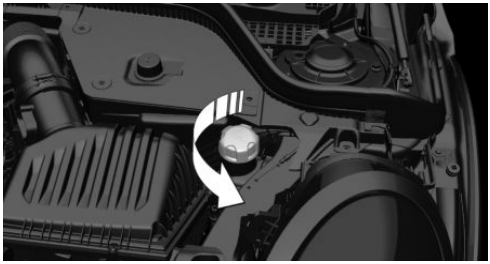
1. Let the engine cool.
2. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.



3. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
4. The coolant level is correct if it lies between the minimum and maximum marks in the filler neck.

Adding

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.



3. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level; do not overfill.
4. Close the cap.
5. Have the cause of the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

DISPOSAL

Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant and coolant additives.

MAINTENANCE

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

MINI MAINTENANCE SYSTEM

The maintenance system indicates required maintenance measures, and thereby provides support in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

In some cases, scopes and intervals may vary according to the country-specific version. Replacement work, spare parts, fuels and lubricants, and wear materials are calculated separately. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

CONDITION BASED SERVICE CBS

Concept

Sensors and special algorithms take into account the driving conditions of the vehicle. CBS uses these to calculate the need for maintenance.

The system makes it possible to adapt the amount of maintenance corresponding to your user profile.

General information

Information on service requirements, refer to page 115, can be displayed on the Control Display.

Service data in the remote control

Information on the required maintenance is continuously stored in the remote control. The dealer's service center can read this data out and suggest an optimized maintenance scope for the vehicle.

Therefore, hand the service advisor the remote control with which the vehicle was driven most recently.

Storage periods

Storage periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are not taken into account.

If this occurs, have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop update the time-dependent maintenance procedures, such as checking brake fluid and, if necessary, changing the engine oil and the microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.

SERVICE AND WARRANTY INFORMATION BOOKLET FOR US MODELS AND WARRANTY AND SERVICE GUIDE BOOKLET FOR CANADIAN MODELS

Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that maintenance and repair be performed by a

dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Records of regular maintenance and repair work should be retained.

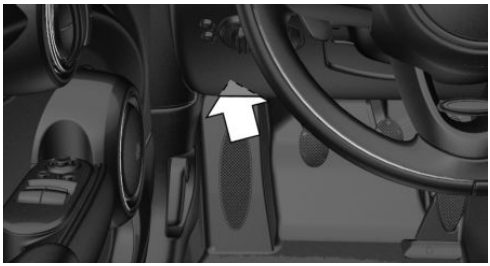
SOCKET FOR OBD ONBOARD DIAGNOSIS

Safety information

NOTE

The socket for Onboard Diagnosis is an intricate component intended to be used in conjunction with specialized equipment to check the vehicle's primary emissions system. Improper use of the socket for Onboard Diagnosis, or contact with the socket for Onboard Diagnosis for other than its intended purpose, can cause vehicle malfunctions and creates risks of personal and property damage. Given the foregoing, the manufacture of your vehicle strongly recommends that access to the socket for Onboard Diagnosis be limited to a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or other persons that have the specialized training and equipment for purposes of properly utilizing the socket for Onboard Diagnosis.◀

Position



There is an OBD socket on the driver's side for checking the primary components in the vehicle's emissions.

Emissions

▷ The warning light lights up:

Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

▷ The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

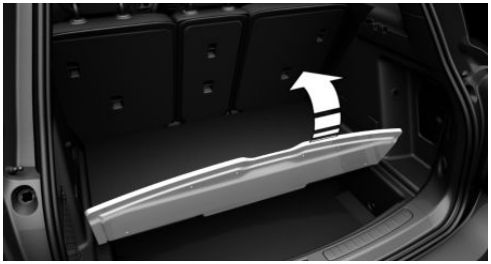
Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

REPLACING COMPONENTS

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

ONBOARD VEHICLE TOOL KIT



The bag containing the onboard vehicle tool kit is located beneath the cargo floor panel.

After use, secure the bag with the onboard vehicle tool kit on a lashing eye again.

WIPER BLADE REPLACEMENT

Safety information

NOTE

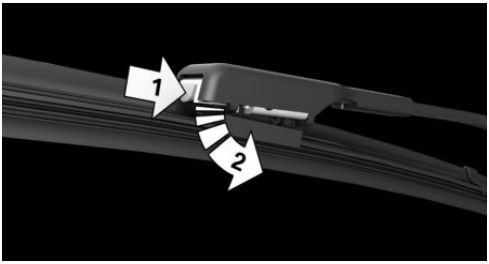
The window may sustain damage if the wiper falls onto it without the wiper blade installed. There is a risk of damage to property. Hold the wiper firmly when changing the wiper blade. Do not fold or switch on the wiper without a wiper blade installed.◂

NOTE

Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.◂

Front wiper blades

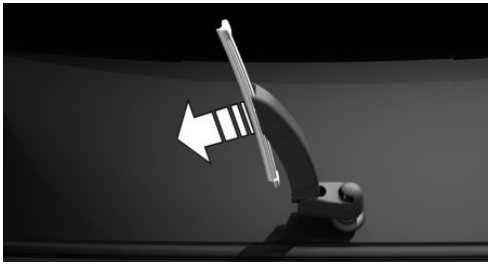
1. To change the wiper blades, fold up the wiper arms.
2. Fold up and hold the wiper arm firmly.
3. Press the button, arrow 1, and swing out the wiper blade, arrow 2.



4. Attach a new wiper blade. The wiper blade must engage audibly.
5. Fold down the wiper arm.

Rear wiper blade

1. Fold up and hold the wiper arm firmly.
2. Pull the wiper blade out of the wiper arm.



3. Attach a new wiper blade. The wiper blade must engage audibly.
4. Fold down the wiper arm.

LIGHT AND BULB REPLACEMENT

General information

Lights and bulbs

Lights and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you have appropriate work performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop if you are unfamiliar with it or if it has not been described here.

A spare light box is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Follow the safety information, refer to page 252.

Light-emitting diodes (LEDs)

Some items of equipment use light-emitting diodes installed behind a cover as a light source. These light-emitting diodes are related to conventional lasers and are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

Follow the safety information, refer to page 252.

Safety information

Lights and bulbs

WARNING

Bulbs can get hot during operation. Contact with the bulbs can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Only change bulbs after they have cooled off.◀

WARNING

Work on switched-on lighting systems can cause short circuits. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. When working on the lighting system, switch off the lights in question. If necessary, heed the bulb manufacturer's instructions.◀

NOTE

Dirty bulbs have a reduced service life. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not hold new bulbs with your bare hands. Use a clean cloth or something similar, or hold the bulb by its base.◀

Light-emitting diodes (LEDs)

WARNING

Too intensive brightness can irritate or damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove the LED covers.◀

Headlight glass

Condensation can form on the inside of the external lights in cool or humid weather. When driving with the lights switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlight glass does not need to be changed.

If despite driving with the headlights switched on, increasing humidity forms, for instance wa-

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

ter droplets in the light, have the headlights checked.

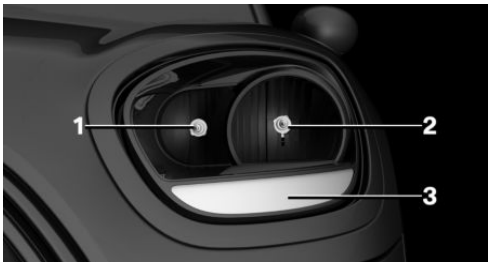
Headlight setting

The headlight adjustments can be affected by changing lights and bulbs. After the headlight adjustment was changed, have it checked and, if necessary, corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Front halogen lights, bulb replacement

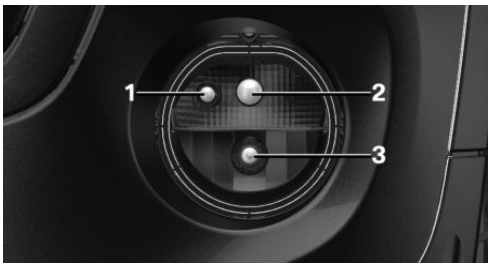
Overview

Halogen headlights



1 High beams
2 Low beams
3 Turn signal

Bug light



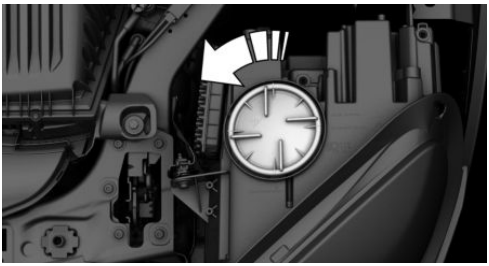
1 Parking lights
2 Daytime running lights
3 Fog lights

High beams

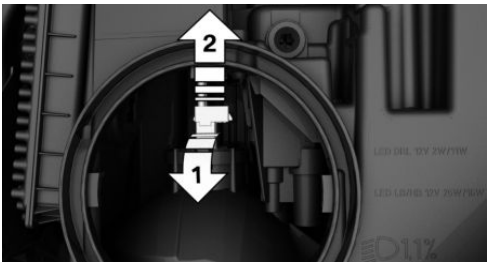
Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 252.

Bulbs: H7

1. Open the hood, refer to page 242.
2. Turn the lid counterclockwise and remove.



3. Tilt the bulb holder up, arrow 1, and pull it out of the headlight toward the rear, arrow 2.



4. Pull the bulb out of the bulb holder.
5. Install the new bulb with the bulb holder in reverse order of removal. In doing so, ensure that the bulb tab is correctly positioned in the headlight housing and the bulb holder perceptibly engages.
6. Check the position of the bulb through the headlight glass.
7. Close the headlight housing with the lid. Make sure that the lid engages.

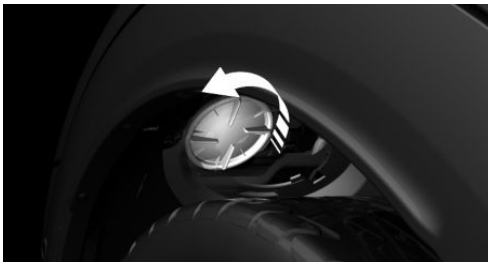
Low beams

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 252.

Bulbs: H7

1. Turn the steering wheel.
2. ▷ On the left facing the driving direction: turn the cover clockwise and remove it.
   ▷ On the right facing the driving direction: turn the cover counterclockwise and remove it.

3. Unscrew the inner cover counterclockwise, and remove it.



4. Tilt the bulb holder down, arrow 1, and pull it downward out of the headlight, arrow 2.

5. Pull the bulb out of the bulb holder.
6. Install the new bulb with the bulb holder in reverse order of removal. In doing so, ensure that the bulb tab is correctly positioned in the headlight housing and the bulb holder perceptibly engages.
7. Check the position of the bulb through the headlight glass.
8. Install the covers. Make sure that the covers engage.

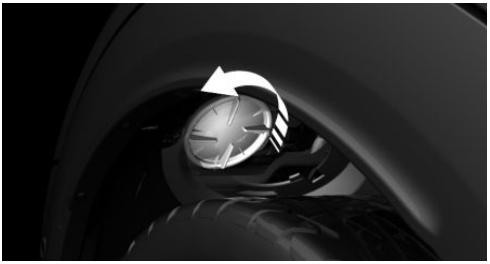
Turn signal

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 252.

Bulbs: PWY24W

1. Turn the steering wheel.
2. ▷ On the left facing the driving direction: turn the cover clockwise and remove it.
   ▷ On the right facing the driving direction: turn the cover counterclockwise and remove it.

3. Unscrew the inner cover counterclockwise, and remove it.



4. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise, arrow 1, and remove, arrow 2.

5. Press the bulb gently into the bulb holder, turn counterclockwise and remove.
6. Insert the new bulb and install the covers in the reverse order. Make sure that the covers engage.

Parking lights/fog lights/daytime running lights

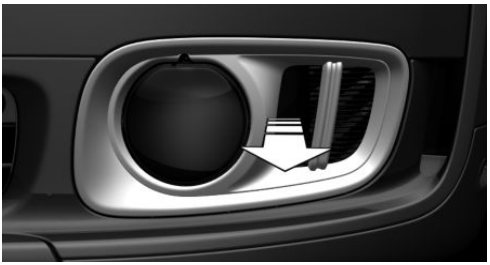
Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 252.

Bulbs:

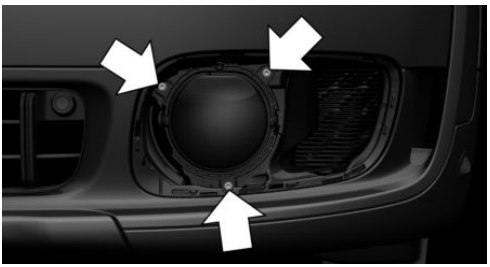
- ▷ Parking lights: W5W
- ▷ Daytime running light: PSX24W.
- ▷ Fog light: H8.

Replacing the bulbs

1. Pull the cover forward out of the bumper.

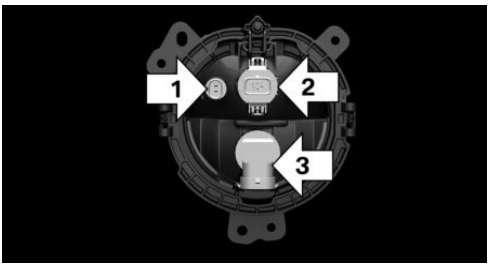


2. Remove the screws and take out the front light.



3. Remove the bulb holder.
   - ▷ Parking lights: turn the bulb holder, arrow 1, counterclockwise and remove.
   - ▷ Daytime running lights: squeeze the upper and lower locks of the bulb, arrow 2, and remove the bulb.

     For better accessibility, remove the bulb of the fog light as needed.
   - ▷ Fog lights: turn the bulb, arrow 3, counterclockwise and remove it.



4. ▷ Parking lights: pull the bulb out of the fixture.
   ▷ Fog lights and daytime running lights: disconnect the bulb from the cable.
5. Insert the new bulb and install the cover in the reverse order.

   The daytime running lights bulb holder engages audibly, first below, then above.

LED front lights, bulb replacement

General information

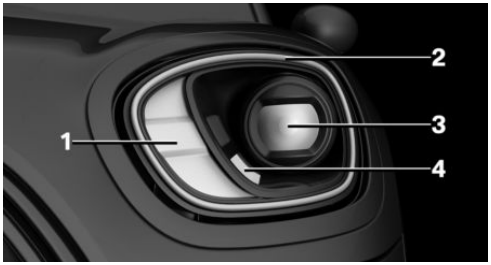
The following lights feature LED technology:

- ▷ Daytime running lights
- ▷ High beams
- ▷ Low beams
- ▷ Cornering light
- ▷ Parking lights
- ▷ Fog lights

In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Overview

Position of the headlights



1 Turn signal
2 Daytime running lights
3 Low beams/high beams
4 Cornering light

LED bug light

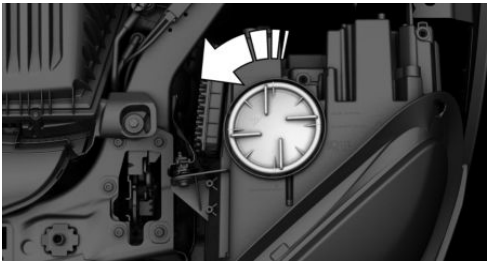
1 Parking lights
2 Fog lights

Turn signal

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 252.

Bulbs: PWY24W.

1. Open the hood, refer to page 242.
2. Turn the lid counterclockwise and remove.



3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise, arrow 1, and remove, arrow 2.

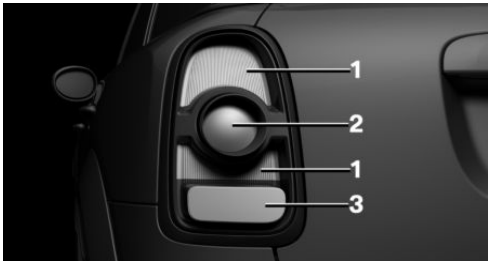
4. Press the bulb gently into the bulb holder, turn counterclockwise and remove.
5. Insert the new bulb and install the cover in the reverse order.

Tail lights, bulb replacement

Overview

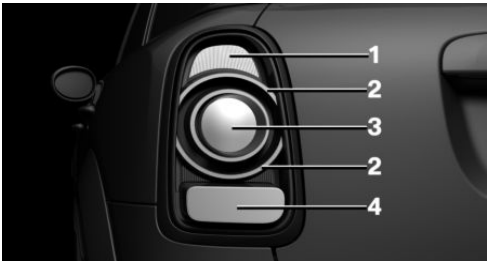
1 Side tail lights
2 Center brake light
3 License plate light

Side tail lights



1 Brake lights/tail lights
2 Turn signal
3 Reversing lights

Side LED tail lights



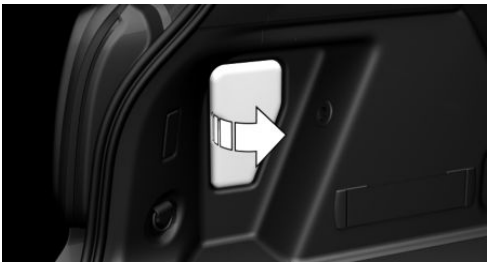
1 Brake light
2 Tail lights
3 Turn signal
4 Reversing lights

Side tail lights

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 252.

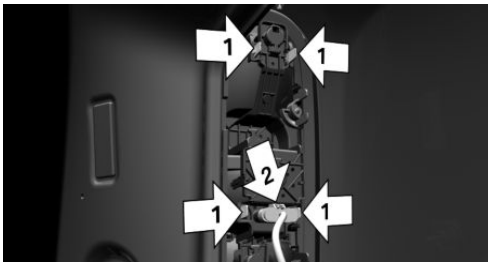
▷ Bulb, brake lights/rear lights, tail lights: P21W
▷ Bulb, brake lights/LED tail lights: H21W
▷ Bulb, turn signal: P21W
▷ Bulb, reversing lights: P21W

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Remove left or right cover.

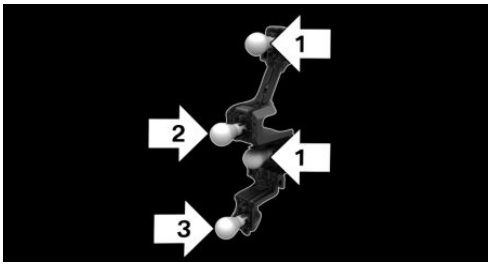


3. Through the opening, loosen the plug connector, arrow 2 on the bulb holder.

Press the latches together, arrows 1, and remove the bulb holder.



4. Remove the bulb holder from the opening.
5. Press the nonworking bulb gently into the socket, turn counterclockwise and remove.
   - ▷ Arrow 1: brake lights/tail lights.
   - ▷ Arrow 2: turn signal.
   - ▷ Arrow 3: reversing light.



6. Proceed in the reverse order to insert the new bulb and attach the bulb holder. Make sure that the bulb holder engages in all fasteners.

Central brake light and license plate lights

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 252.

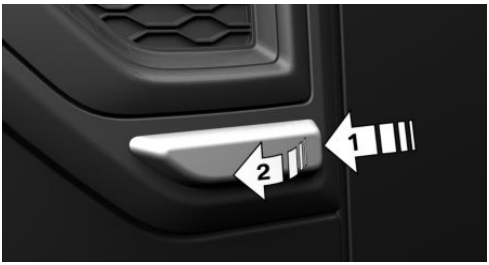
The lights feature LED technology. In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Side turn signal, bulb replacement

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 252.

Bulb: WY5W

1. Push the side turn signal forward in the driving direction, arrow 1, and swing it outward, arrow 2.



2. ▷ On the left facing the driving direction: turn the bulb holder clockwise and remove.
   - ▷ On the right facing the driving direction: turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove.
3. Replace the bulb.
4. Insert the bulb holder.
5. Insert the rear side turn signal, arrow 1, and swing it forward, arrow 2.

VEHICLE BATTERY

Maintenance

The battery is maintenance-free.

The added amount of acid is sufficient for the service life of the battery.

More information about the battery can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Replacing the vehicle battery

General information

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop register the vehicle battery to the vehicle after the battery has been replaced. Once the battery has been registered again, all comfort features will be available without restriction and any Check Control messages displayed which relate to comfort features will disappear.

Safety information

NOTE

Vehicle batteries that are not compatible can damage vehicle systems and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of personal and property damage. Only vehicle batteries that are compatible with your vehicle type should be installed in your vehicle. Information on compatible vehicle batteries is available at your dealer's service center.◀

Charging the battery

General information

Make sure that the battery is always sufficiently charged to guarantee that the battery remains usable for its full service life.

A discharged battery is indicated by a red indicator light.

The battery may need to be charged in the following cases:

- ▷ When making frequent short-distance drives.
- ▷ If the vehicle is not used for more than a month.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: when parked for long periods of time in selector lever position D, R or N.

Safety information

NOTE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12 volt on-board network can be overloaded or damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.◀

Starting aid terminals

In the vehicle, only charge the battery via the starting aid terminals, refer to page 262, in the engine compartment with the engine off.

Power failure

After a power loss, some equipment needs to be newly initialized or individual settings updated, for example:

- ▷ Time: update.
- ▷ Date: update.
- ▷ Seat and mirror memory: store the positions again.
- ▷ Glass sunroof: initialize the system.

Disposing of old batteries

Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

Maintain the battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.

FUSES

Safety information

WARNING

Incorrect and repaired fuses can overload electrical lines and components. There is a risk of fire. Never attempt to repair a blown fuse. Do not replace a nonworking fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating.◀

Accessing the fuses

The fuses are located in the glove compartment.

1. Open the glove compartment.
2. Swing the cover down, arrow.

Plastic tweezers and information on the fuse types and locations are stored in the fuse box.

Replacing fuses

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop replace the fuses.

BREAKDOWN ASSISTANCE

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS

The button is located above the Control Display.

The red light in the button flashes when the hazard warning flashers are activated.

ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

General information

Roadside Assistance can be reached around the clock in many countries. You can obtain assistance there in the event of a vehicle breakdown.

WARNING TRIANGLE

The warning triangle is located in the tailgate. To remove, loosen the brackets.

FIRST-AID KIT

General information

Some of the articles have a limited service life.

Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any expired items promptly.

Storage

The first-aid kit is located in the cargo area.

JUMP-STARTING

General information

If the battery is discharged, the engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.

Safety information

DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.◀

WARNING

If the jumper cables are connected in the incorrect order, sparking may occur. There is a risk of injury. Pay attention to the correct order during connection.◀

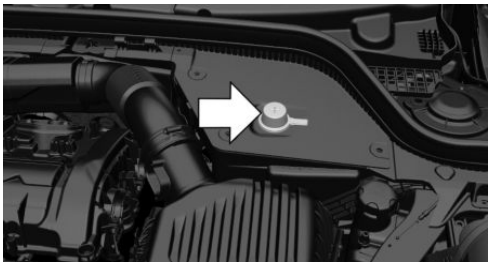
NOTE

In the case of body contact between the two vehicles, a short circuit can occur during jump-starting. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that no body contact occurs.◀

Preparation

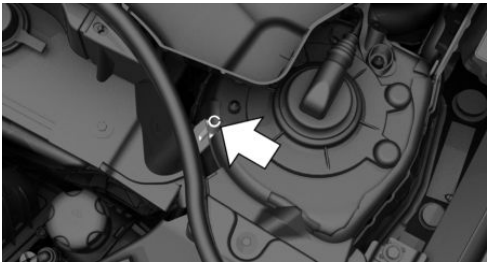
1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. The voltage information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electronic systems/power consumers in both vehicles.

Starting aid terminals



The starting aid terminal in the engine compartment acts as the battery's positive terminal.

Open the cover of the starting aid terminal.



A special connection on the body acts as the battery negative terminal.

Connecting the cables

To prevent personal injury or damage to both vehicles, adhere strictly to the following procedure.

1. Pull off the lid of the starting aid terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the terminal clamp on the other end of the cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of assisting vehicle.
5. Attach the second terminal clamp to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle that is to be started in the usual way.

If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.

3. Let both engines run for several minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse order.

Check the battery and recharge, if needed.

TOW-STARTING AND TOWING

Safety information

WARNING

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.◀

Steptronic transmission with driven front axle: transporting the vehicle

General information

The vehicle must not be towed if the front wheels are touching the ground.

Safety information

NOTE

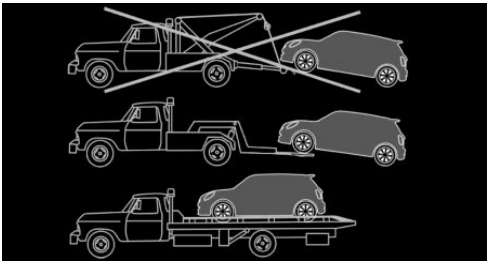
The vehicle can be damaged when towing the vehicle with a lifted rear axle. There is a risk of damage to property. Have vehicle transported only with lifted front axle or on a loading platform.◀

Pushing the vehicle

To remove a broken-down vehicle from the danger area, it can be pushed for a short distance.

Roll or push, refer to page 105, the vehicle.

Tow truck



Your vehicle should be transported with a tow truck with a so-called lift bar or on a flat bed.

NOTE

The vehicle can become damaged when lifting and securing it.

There is a risk of damage to property.

- ▷ Lift the vehicle using suitable means.
- ▷ Do not lift or secure the vehicle by its tow fitting, body parts, or suspension parts.◀

Steptronic transmission with ALL4: transporting the vehicle

General information

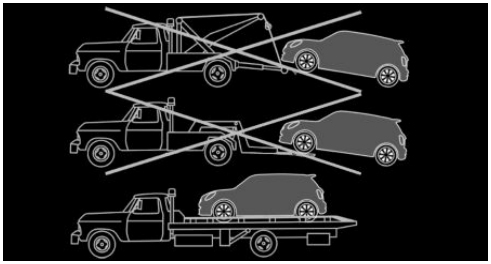
The vehicle is not permitted to be towed.

Pushing the vehicle

To remove a broken-down vehicle from the danger area, it can be pushed for a short distance.

Roll or push, refer to page 105, the vehicle.

Tow truck



The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.

NOTE

The vehicle can become damaged when lifting and securing it.

There is a risk of damage to property.

- ▷ Lift the vehicle using suitable means.
- ▷ Do not lift or secure the vehicle by its tow fitting, body parts, or suspension parts.◀

Manual transmission

Towing or pushing the vehicle

A broken-down vehicle can be towed or pushed.

Roll or push, refer to page 103, the vehicle.

NOTE

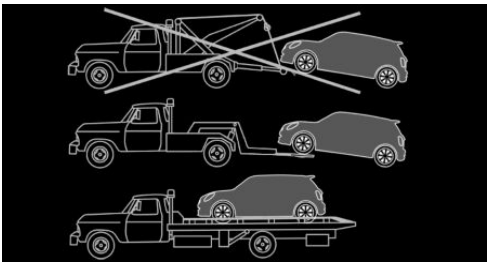
If manual unlocking of the parking brake is not possible, the vehicle cannot be moved or towed. There is a risk of damage to property. The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.◀

Follow the following instructions:

- ▷ Make sure that the ignition is switched on; otherwise, the low beams, tail lights, turn signals, and wipers may be unavailable.
- ▷ Do not tow the vehicle with the rear axle tilted, as the front wheels could turn.
- ▷ When the engine is stopped, there is no power assist. Consequently, more force needs to be applied when braking and steering.
- ▷ Larger steering wheel movements are required.
- ▷ The towing vehicle must not be lighter than the vehicle being towed; otherwise, it will not be possible to control the vehicle's response.
- ▷ Do not exceed a towing speed of 30 mph/50 km/h.
- ▷ Do not exceed a towing distance of 30 miles/50 km.

Tow truck

With driven front axle



Have your vehicle transported with a tow truck with a so-called lift bar or on a flat bed.

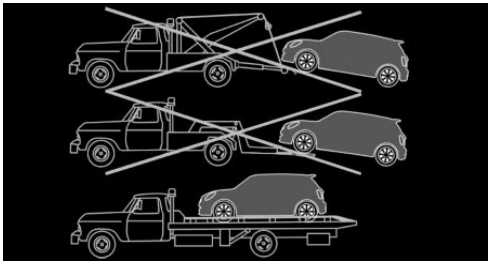
NOTE

The vehicle can become damaged when lifting and securing it.

There is a risk of damage to property.

- ▷ Lift the vehicle using suitable means.
- ▷ Do not lift or secure the vehicle by its tow fitting, body parts, or suspension parts.◀

With ALL4



Have your vehicle transported on a flatbed surface only

NOTE

The vehicle can be damaged when towing the vehicle with a single lifted axle. There is a risk of damage to property. The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.◂

NOTE

The vehicle can become damaged when lifting and securing it.

There is a risk of damage to property.

- ▷ Lift the vehicle using suitable means.
- ▷ Do not lift or secure the vehicle by its tow fitting, body parts, or suspension parts.◂

Towing other vehicles

General information

Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.

If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

Safety information

WARNING

If the approved gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is lighter than the vehicle to be towed, the tow fitting can tear off or it will not be possible to control the vehicle's response. There is a risk of an accident! Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is heavier than the vehicle to be towed.◂

NOTE

If the tow bar or tow rope is attached incorrectly, damage to other vehicle parts can occur. There is a risk of damage to property. Correctly attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting.◂

Tow bar

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles.

Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please follow the following:

- ▷ Maneuvering capability is limited going around corners.
- ▷ The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an offset.

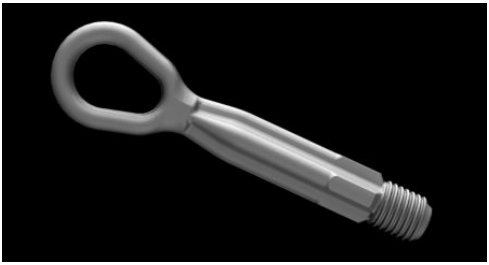
Tow rope

When starting to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

Use nylon ropes or straps, which will enable the vehicle to be towed without jerking.

Tow fitting

General information



The screw-in tow fitting should always be carried in the vehicle.

The tow fitting can be screwed in at the front or rear of the vehicle.

The tow fitting and the onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 251, are together in the cargo area.

Use of the tow fitting:

- ▷ Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in.
- ▷ Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only.
- ▷ Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, for instance do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting.

Safety information

NOTE

If the tow fitting is not used as intended, there may be damage to the vehicle or to the tow fitting. There is a risk of damage to property. Follow the notes on using the tow fitting.◀

Screw thread for tow fitting

Threaded holes for the tow fitting are located in the front and rear of the vehicle on the right side with respect to the direction of travel.

Press on the mark on the edge of the cover to push it out.

Tow-starting

Steptronic transmission

Do not tow-start the vehicle.

Tow-starting the engine is not possible due to the Steptronic transmission.

Have the reasons for the starting difficulties corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Manual transmission

If possible, do not tow-start the vehicle but start the engine by jump-starting, refer to page 261. If the vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter, only tow-start while the engine is cold.

1. Switch on the hazard warning system and comply with local regulations.
2. Switch on the ignition, refer to page 88.
3. Engage third gear.
4. Have the vehicle tow-started with the clutch pedal pressed and slowly release the pedal. After the engine starts, immediately press on the clutch pedal again.
5. Stop at a suitable location, remove the tow bar or rope, and switch off the hazard warning system.
6. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

CARE

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

WASHING THE VEHICLE

General information

Regularly remove foreign objects such as leaves in the area below the windshield when the hood is raised.

Wash your vehicle frequently, particularly in winter. Intense soiling and road salt can damage the vehicle.

Steam jets or high-pressure washers

Safety information

NOTE

When cleaning with high-pressure washers, components can be damaged due to the pressure or temperatures being too high. There is a risk of damage to property. Maintain sufficient distance and do not spray too long continuously. Follow the operating instructions for the high-pressure washer.◀

Distances and temperature

- ▷ Maximum temperature: 140 °F/60 °C.
- ▷ Minimum distance from sensors, cameras, seals: 12 inches/30 cm.
- ▷ Minimum distance from glass sunroof: 31.5 in/80 cm.

Automatic vehicle washes

Safety information

NOTE

Improper use of automatic vehicle washes can cause damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of damage to property. Follow the following instructions:

- ▷ Give preference to cloth vehicle washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.
- ▷ Avoid vehicle washes with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm to avoid damage to the chassis.
- ▷ Observe the tire width of the guide rail to avoid damage to tires and rims.
- ▷ Fold in exterior mirrors to avoid damage to the exterior mirrors.
- ▷ With rod antenna: unscrew the rod antenna to avoid rod antenna breakage.
- ▷ Deactivate the wiper and, if necessary, rain sensor to avoid damage to the wiper system.◀

Driving into a vehicle wash with a manual transmission

In vehicle washes, the vehicle must be able to roll freely.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 103.

Driving into a vehicle wash with a Steptronic transmission

In vehicle washes, the vehicle must be able to roll freely.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 105.

Some vehicle washes do not permit persons in the vehicle. The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside when in selector lever position N. A signal is sounded when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.

Driving out of a vehicle wash

Ensure that the vehicle key is in the car.

Start the engine, refer to page 89.

Headlights

Do not rub wet headlights dry and do not use abrasive or acidic cleaning agents.

Soak areas that have been dirtied, for instance from insects, with shampoo and wash off with water.

Thaw ice with de-icing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, braking action can be reduced. The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Completely remove all residues on the windows, to minimize loss of visibility due to smearing and to reduce wiper noises and wiper blade wear.

VEHICLE CARE

Vehicle care products

General information

MINI recommends using vehicle care and cleaning products from MINI. Suitable care products are available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

WARNING

Cleansers can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health. There is a risk of injury. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Only use products intended for cleaning vehicles. Follow the instructions on the container.◀

Vehicle paint

General information

Regular care contributes to driving safety and value retention. Environmental influences in areas with elevated air pollution or natural contaminants, such as tree resin or pollen can affect the vehicle's paintwork. Tailor the frequency and extent of your vehicle care to these influences.

Aggressive substances such as spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings, must be removed immediately to prevent the finish from being altered or discolored.

Matte finish

Only use cleaning and care products suitable for vehicles with matte finish.

Leather care

Remove dust from the leather regularly, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, particles of dust and road grime chafe in pores and folds, and lead to increased wear and premature degradation of the leather surface.

To guard against discoloration, such as from clothing, clean leather and provide leather care roughly every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently because soiling on such surfaces is substantially more visible.

Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective layer of the leather surface.

Upholstery material care

General information

Vacuum the upholstery regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

If upholstery is very dirty, for instance with beverage stains, use a soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaner.

Clean the upholstery down to the seams using large sweeping motions. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

Safety information

NOTE

Open Velcro® fasteners on articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. There is a risk of damage to property. Ensure that any Velcro® fasteners are closed.◂

Caring for special components

Light-alloy wheels

When cleaning the vehicle, use only neutral wheel cleaners having a pH value from 5 to 9. Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or steam jets above 140 °F/60 °C. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents can destroy the protective layer of adjacent components, such as the brake disc.

After cleaning, apply the brakes briefly to dry them. The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean components such as the radiator grille or door handles with an ample supply of water, possibly with shampoo added, particularly when they have been exposed to road salt.

Rubber components

Environmental influences can cause surface soiling of rubber parts and a loss of gloss. Use only water and suitable cleaning agents for cleaning.

Treat especially worn rubber parts with rubber care agents at regular intervals. When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing vehicle care products in order to avoid damage or noises.

Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood facing and fine wood components only with a moist rag. Then dry with a soft cloth.

Plastic components

NOTE

Cleansers that contain alcohol or solvents, such as lacquer thinners, heavy-duty grease removers, fuel, or such, can damage plastic parts. There is a risk of damage to property. Clean with a microfiber cloth. Dampen cloth lightly with water.◂

Plastic components are e.g.:

- ▷ Imitation leather surfaces.
- ▷ Roofliner.
- ▷ Light lenses.
- ▷ Instrument cluster cover.
- ▷ Matt black spray-coated components.
- ▷ Painted parts in the car's interior.

Clean with a microfiber cloth.

Dampen cloth lightly with water.

Do not soak the roofliner.

Safety belts

WARNING

Chemical cleansers can destroy the safety belt webbing. Missing protective effect of the safety belts. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Use only a mild soapy solution for cleaning the safety belts.◀

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.

Use only a mild soapy solution, with the safety belts clipped into their buckles.

Safety belts should only be allowed to retract if they are dry.

Carpets and floor mats

WARNING

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of an accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.◀

Floor mats can be removed from the car's interior for cleaning.

If the floor carpets are very dirty, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or a textile cleaner. To prevent matting of the carpet, rub back and forth in the direction of travel only.

Sensor/camera lenses

To clean sensors and camera lenses, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass detergent.

Displays/Screens/Projection lenses

NOTE

Chemical cleansers, moisture or fluids of any kind can damage the surface of displays and screens. There is a risk of damage to property. Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.◀

NOTE

The surface of displays can be damaged with improper cleaning. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid pressure that is too high and do not use any scratching materials.◀

Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.

For stubborn soiling on the projection lens of the Head-up Display, dampen the microfiber cloth with alcohol. Projection lens, refer to page 123.

Long-term vehicle storage

When the vehicle is shut down for longer than three months, special measures must be taken. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

FIND ME.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

AT A GLANCE

CONTROLS

DRIVING TIPS

MOBILITY

REFERENCE

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

TECHNICAL DATA

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

GENERAL INFORMATION

The technical data and specifications in this Owner's Manual are used as guidance values. The vehicle-specific data can deviate from this, for instance due to the selected special equipment, country version or country-specific measurement method. Detailed values can be found in the approval documents, on labels on the vehicle or can be obtained from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

The information in the vehicle documents always has priority over the information in this Owner's Manual.

DIMENSIONS

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment or country-specific measurement method.

The specified heights do not take into account attached parts, for instance a roof antenna, roof racks or spoiler. The heights can deviate, for instance due to the selected special equipment, tires, load and chassis version.

MINI Countryman		
Width with mirrors	inches/mm	78.9/2,005
Width without mirrors	inches/mm	71.7/1,822
Height	inches/mm	61.3/1,557
Length	inches/mm	169.8/4,314
Wheelbase	inches/mm	105.1/2,670
Smallest turning radius diam.	ft/m	37.5/11.4

WEIGHTS

MINI Cooper Countryman		
Approved gross vehicle weight		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	4,321/1,960
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	4,376/1,985
Load	lbs/kg	860/390
Approved front axle load		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	2,249/1,020
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	2,315/1,050
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,183/990

MINI Cooper S Countryman		
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	4,542/2,060
Load	lbs/kg	926/420
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,403/1,090
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,205/1,000

MINI Cooper Countryman ALL4		
Approved gross vehicle weight		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	4,530/2,055
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	4,564/2,070
Load	lbs/kg	860/390
Approved front axle load		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	2,359/1,070
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	2,403/1,090
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,293/1,040

MINI Cooper S Countryman ALL4		
Approved gross vehicle weight		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	4,674/2,120
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	4,696/2,130
Load	lbs/kg	926/420
Approved front axle load		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	2,425/1,100
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	2,469/1,120
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,315/1,050

MINI John Cooper Works Countryman ALL4		
Approved gross vehicle weight		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	4,696/2,130
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	4,740/2,150
Load	lbs/kg	926/420
Approved front axle load		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	2,458/1,115
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	2,491/1,130
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,337/1,060

CAPACITIES

MINI Countryman	US gal/liters	Notes
Fuel tank, approx.	16.1/61.0	Fuel quality, refer to page 220.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17

APPENDIX

Any updates to the Owner's Manual of the vehicle are listed here.

UPDATES AFTER THE EDITORIAL DEADLINE

These chapters of the printed Owner's Manual contain updates made after the editorial deadline:

▷ Information: vehicle identification number, refer to page 12.

EVERYTHING FROM A TO Z

INDEX

A

ABS, Antilock Brake System 153
Acceleration Assistant, see Launch Control 107
Accessories and parts 8
ACC, see Camera-based cruise control 158
Activated-charcoal filter 182
Activation times, parked-car ventilation 183
Active Cruise Control, see Camera-based cruise control 158
Active Guard, see Intelligent Safety 144
Adaptive brake lights, see Brake force display 151
Additives, oil 245
Adjustments, steering wheel 81
After washing vehicle 268
Airbags 134
Airbags, indicator and warning light 136
Air circulation, see Recirculated-air mode 177, 181
Air conditioner 176
Air conditioning 177, 180
Air, dehumidifying, see Air conditioning 177, 180
Air distribution, manual 178, 181
Air flow, air conditioner 177
Air flow, automatic climate control 181
Air pressure, tires 222
Air vents, see Ventilation 182
Alarm system 65
Alarm triggering 65
Alarm, unintentional 66
Alertness assistant 151
ALL4 155
All-season tires, see Winter tires 229
All-wheel drive, see ALL4 155
Alternative oil types 245
Antifreeze, washer fluid 101
Antilock Brake System, ABS 153
Anti-slip control, see DSC 153
Anti-theft protection, lug bolts 236
App, MINI Motorer's Guide 44
Approach control warning with city light braking function 145
Approved axle load 275
Apps, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Arrival time 120
Ash tray 188
Assistance when driving off 156
AUTO intensity 180
Automatic climate control 179
Automatic Curb Monitor 80
Automatic deactivation, front-seat passenger airbags 136
Automatic headlight control 129
Automatic locking 64
Automatic recirculated-air control 181
Automatic transmission with Steptronic 103
Automatic unlocking 64
Automatic vehicle wash 267
AUTO program, automatic climate control 180
AUTO program, intensity 180
Auto Start/Stop function 90
Auto washing 267
AUX-IN port, position in vehicle 189
AUX-IN port, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Average fuel consumption 119
Average speed 119
Axle loads, weights 275

B

Backrest curvature, see Lumbar support 72, 73
Backrest, seats 71
Band-aids, see First-aid kit 261
Battery replacement, vehicle battery 259
Battery, vehicle 258
Being towed, see Tow-starting and towing 263
Belts, safety belts 75
Beverage holder, cup holder 192
Blocking, power window 68
Bluetooth connection 36
Bonus range, GREEN Mode 211
Bottle holder, see Cup holder 192
Brake assistant 153
Brake discs, break-in 204
Brake force display 151

Brake lights, brake force display 151
Brake pads, break-in 204
Braking, information 206
Breakdown assistance 261
Breakdown assistance, Roadside Assistance 261
Break-in 204
Brightness of Control Display 33
Bug light 253
Bulb replacement 252
Bulb replacement, front 253, 256
Bulb replacement, rear 257
Bulb replacement, side 258
Bulbs and lights 252
Button, Start/Stop 88
Bypassing, see Jump-starting 261

C

Calendar, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
California Proposition 65 Warning 8
Calling up mirror adjustment 64
Calling up seat adjustment 64
Camera-based assistance systems, see Intelligent Safety 144
Camera-based cruise control 158
Camera lenses, care 270
Camera, rearview camera 170
Can holder, see Cup holder 192
Care, displays 270
Care, vehicle 268
Care, washing the vehicle 267
Cargo area 194
Cargo area, adapting size 198
Cargo area, enlarging 196
Cargo area lid 58
Cargo area, loading 195
Cargo area, seating surface 199
Cargo area, storage compartments 196
Cargo cover 195
Cargo position, rear seat backrest 196
Cargo, stowing and securing 195
Cargo straps 195
Carpet, care 270
Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust gas system 205
CBS Condition Based Service 249
CD, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Center armrest 192
Center console 18
Central Information Display (CID) 20
Central Information Display (CID) operating concept 20
Central instrument cluster, LED ring 122
Central locking system, unlocking, from inside 55
Central screen, see Control Display 20
Changes, technical, see For Your Own Safety 8
Changing parts 251
Changing wheels 235
Changing wheels/tires 228
Chassis number, see Vehicle identification number 12
Check Control 110
Checking the oil level electronically 243
Children, seating position 83
Children, transporting safely 83
Child restraint system 83
Child restraint system LATCH 85
Child restraint systems, mounting 84
Child safety locks 87
Child seat, mounting 84
Child seats 83
Chrome parts, care 269
Cigarette lighter 188
Cleaning, displays 270
Climate control 176, 179
Clothes hooks 193
Coasting 213
Coasting with engine decoupled, coasting 213
Coasting with idling engine 213
Combination switch, see Turn signals 94
Combi switch, see Wiper system 95, 98
Comfort Access 55
Compartments in the doors 192
Compass 186
Compatible devices, see Suitable devices 36
Compressor 231
Computer, see Onboard Computer 118
Condensation on windows 182
Condensation under the vehicle 207
Condition Based Service CBS 249
Configuring driving program 156
Confirmation signal 65
Connecting device 35
Connecting mobile phone 35
Connecting smartphone 35
Connecting telephone 35
Connections 35

Contacts, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Continued driving with a flat tire 140, 144
Control Display 20
Control Display, settings 32
Controller 21, 22
Controller operation 22
Control systems, driving stability 153
Convenient closing 51
Convenient opening 51
Coolant 247
Cooling, maximum 180
Cooling system 247
Cornering light 130
Corrosion on brake discs 206
Cosmetic mirror 188
Country timer 125
Coupling, see Pairing 35
Courtesy lights during unlocking 51
Courtesy lights with the vehicle locked 52
Cruise control 164
Cruise control, active 158
Cruise control with distance control, see Camera-based cruise control 158
Cruise control without distance control, see Cruise control 164
Cruising range 115
Cup holder 192
Current fuel consumption 115

D

Damage, tires 228
Damping control, dynamic 155
Data memory 9
Data protection, settings 34
Data, technical 274, 276
Date 33
Date display 115
Daytime running lights 130
DCC, see Cruise control 164
Defrosting, see Defrosting the windows 178
Defrosting, see Windows, defrosting 182
Defrosting the windows 178
Dehumidifying, air 177, 180
Deleting personal data 35
Deletion of personal data 35
Destination distance 120
Device list 35
Digital clock 115
Digital compass 186
Dimensions 274
Dimmable exterior mirrors 80
Dimmable interior mirror 81
Direction indicator, see Turn signals 94
Display, electronic, instrument cluster 110
Display, engine temperature 120
Display, GREEN Mode 210
Display lighting, see Instrument lighting 131
Displays 109
Displays, care 270
Disposal, coolant 248
Disposal, vehicle battery 259
Distance control, see PDC 166
Distance to destination 120
Divided screen view, split screen 27
Drive-off assistant 156
Drive-off assistant, see DSC 153
Driver assistance, see Intelligent Safety 144
Driver profiles 61
Driver profiles, exporting profiles 63
Driver profiles, importing profiles 63
Driving Dynamics Control, see MINI Driving Modes switch 155
Driving Excitement, SPORT 121
Driving instructions, break-in 204
Driving mode, GREEN 210
Driving mode, GREEN driving style analysis 214
Driving modes 155
Driving notes, general 205
Driving on poor roads 207
Driving on racetracks 208
Driving stability control systems 153
Driving style analysis 214
Driving tip, GREEN tip 212
Driving tips 205
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 153
DTC Dynamic Traction Control 154
DVD, Video, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Dynamic Damping Control 155
Dynamic Stability Control DSC 153
Dynamic Traction Control DTC 154

E

Easy Opener 57
Electronic displays, instrument cluster 110
Electronic oil measurement 243
Electronic Stability Program ESP, see DSC 153
E-mail, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Emergency release, fuel filler flap 219
Emergency service, see Roadside Assistance 261
Emergency wheel, compact wheel, see Emergency wheel 239
Energy Control 115
Engine, automatic Start/Stop function 90
Engine, automatic switch-off 90
Engine compartment 241
Engine compartment, working in 241
Engine coolant 247
Engine idling when driving, coasting 213
Engine oil 243
Engine oil, adding 244
Engine oil additives 245
Engine oil change 246
Engine oil filler neck 244
Engine oil types, alternative 245
Engine oil types, suitable 245
Engine start, jump-starting 261
Engine start, see Starting the engine 89
Engine stop 90
Engine temperature, display 120
Entering a destination, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Entering an address, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Entering a vehicle wash 267
Equipment, interior 184
Error displays, see Check Control 110
ESP Electronic Stability Program, see DSC 153
Exchanging wheels/tires 228
Exhaust gas system 205
Exiting a vehicle wash 267
Exterior mirror, automatic dimming feature 80
Exterior mirrors 79
Exterior mirrors, Automatic Curb Monitor 80
Exterior mirrors, malfunction 80
External start 261
External temperature display 114
External temperature warning 114
Eyes for securing cargo 195

F

Failure message, see Check Control 110
False alarm, see Unintentional alarm 66
Fan, see Air flow 177, 181
Fastening safety belts, see Safety belts 75
Filler neck for engine oil 244
Finding charging stations, see Charging stations and points of interest, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Fine wood, care 269
First-aid kit 261
Fish, MINIMALISM display 214
Flat tire, changing wheels 235
Flat Tire Monitor FTM 142
Flat tire, repairing 230
Flat tire, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 137
Flat tire, warning light 139, 143
Flooding 205
Floor carpet, care 270
Floor mats, care 270
Fogged up windows 178
Fold-away position, windshield wipers 97, 101
Fold back rear seat backrests 196
Foot brake 206
For Your Own Safety 8
Front airbags 134
Front fog lights 131
Front-seat passenger airbags, automatic deactivation 136
Front-seat passenger airbags, indicator light 137
Front seats 71
FTM Flat Tire Monitor 142
Fuel 220
Fuel cap 218
Fuel consumption, see Average fuel consumption 119
Fuel filler flap 218
Fuel gauge 114
Fuel quality 220
Fuel recommendation 220
Fuel, tank capacity 276
Fuse 260

G

Garage door opener, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 184
Gasoline 220
Gear shift indicator 116
General driving notes 205
General settings 32
Glare shield 188
Glass sunroof, initialize the system 70
Glass sunroof, see Panoramic glass sunroof 68
Glove compartment 191
GPS, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation,

Entertainment, Communication 6
GREEN bonus range 211
GREEN Mode 210
GREEN - program, driving dynamics 155
GREEN tip, driving tip 212
Gross vehicle weight, approved 275
Ground clearance 207

H

Halogen headlights 253
Handbrake, see Parking brake 93
Hand-held transmitter, alternating code 185
Hands-free kit, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Hazard warning flashers 261
Head airbag 134
Headlight control, automatic 129
Headlight courtesy delay feature 129
Headlight flasher 95
Headlight glass 252
Headlights, care 268
Head restraints, front 76
Head restraints, rear 77
Head-up Display 123
Head-up Display, see Memory function 79
Head-up Display, shift point indicator 125
Head-up Display, sport displays 125
Head-up Display, standard view 123
Heavy cargo, stowing cargo 195
High-beam Assistant 130
High beams 95
High beams/low beams, see High-beam Assistant 130
Hills 206
Hill start assistant, see Drive-off assistant 156
Holder for beverages 192
Homepage 6
Hood 241
Horn 16
Hot exhaust gas system 205
Hotline, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
HUD Head-up Display 123
Hydroplaning 205

I

Ice warning, see External temperature warning 114
Icy roads, see External temperature warning 114
Identification marks, tires 226
Identification number, see Vehicle identification number 12
Ignition off 88
Ignition on 88
Illuminated ring, central instrument cluster 122
Indication of a flat tire 139, 143
Indicator light, see Check Control 110
Individual air distribution 178, 181
Individual settings, see Driver profiles 61
Inductive charging, see Wireless charging, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Inflation pressure, tires 222
Inflation pressure warning, tires 142
Info Display, see Onboard Computer 118
Information 6
Initialize, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 138
Initializing, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 142
Instrument cluster 109
Instrument cluster, electronic displays 110
Instrument lighting 131
Integrated key 54
Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle 43
Intelligent Safety 144
Intended use 8
Intensity, AUTO program 180
Interior equipment 184
Interior lights 132
Interior lights during unlocking 51
Interior lights with the vehicle locked 52
Interior mirror 79
Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature 81
Interior mirror, compass 186
Interior mirror, manually dimmable 81
Interior motion sensor 66
Internet site 6
Interval display, service requirements 115
Interval mode 96, 99
In the vicinity of the center console 18
In the vicinity of the roofliner 19
In the vicinity of the steering wheel 16

J

Jacking points for the vehicle jack 237

Jam protection system, glass sunroof 69
Jam protection system, windows 67
Jump-starting 261

K

Keyless Go, see Comfort Access 55
Key, see Integrated key 54
Key, see Remote control 50
Kickdown, Steptronic transmission 105
Knee airbag 135

L

Label on recommended tires 229
Label, runflat tires 230
Language, on the Control Display 32
Lashing eyes 195
LATCH child restraint fixing system 85
Launch Control 107
Leather, care 268
LED ring, central instrument cluster 122
LEDs, light-emitting diodes 252
Letters and numbers, entering 24
Light 128
Light-alloy wheels, care 269
Light-emitting diodes, LEDs 252
Lighter 188
Lighting 128
Light replacement 252
Light replacement, front 253, 256
Light replacement, rear 257
Light replacement, side 258
Lights and bulbs 252
Light switch 128
List of all messages 34
Load 195
Loading 194
Loading position 196
Locking, automatic 64
Locking, from inside 55
Locking, settings 64
Low beams 128
Low beams, automatic, see High-beam Assistant 130
Lower back support 73
Lower back support, mechanical 72
Lug bolt lock 236
Luggage rack, see Roof-mounted luggage rack 207
Lumbar support 73
Lumbar support, mechanical 72

M

Maintenance 249
Maintenance requirements 249
Maintenance, service requirements 115
Maintenance system, MINI 249
Make-up mirror 188
Malfunction displays, see Check Control 110
Manual air distribution 178, 181
Manual air flow 177, 181
Manual brake, see Parking brake 93
Manual mode, transmission 105
Manual operation, fuel filler flap 219
Manual operation, PDC Park Distance Control 167
Manual operation, rearview camera 170
Manual transmission 102
Manufacturer of the MINI 8
Map update, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Matte finish 268
Maximum cooling 180
Maximum speed, display 117
Maximum speed, winter tires 229
Measurement, units of 33
Mechanical key 54
Medical kit 261
Memory function 79
Menu in instrument cluster 118
Menus, Central Information Display (CID) 22
Messages 34
Messages, see Check Control 110
Microfilter 178, 182
MID - program, driving dynamics 155
MINI Connected, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
MINI driving modes 155
MINI logo projection during unlocking 51
MINI maintenance system 249
MINIMALISM analyzer 214
MINIMALISM information 212
MINI Motorer’s Guide app 44
Minimum tread, tires 228
MINI Picnic Bench 199
Mirrors 79
Mirror, see Memory function 79
Mobile communication devices in the vehicle 205
Mobility System 231

Modifications, technical, see For Your Own Safety 8
Moisture in headlight 252
Monitor, see Control Display 20
Motorer's Guide app, see MINI Motorer's Guide app 44
Mounting of child restraint systems 84
MP3 player, see Audio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons 16
Multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Music hard disk, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

N

Navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Neck restraints, front, see Head restraints 76
Neck restraints, rear, see Head restraints 77
Neutral cleaner, see Wheel cleaner 269
New wheels and tires 228
Notes, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
No-touch closing of the tailgate 57
No-touch opening of the tailgate 57

O

OBD Onboard Diagnostics 250
Obstacle marking, rearview camera 171
Octane rating, see Recommended fuel grade 221
Odometer 114
Office, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Oil 243
Oil, adding 244
Oil additives 245
Oil change 246
Oil change interval, service requirements 115
Oil filler neck 244
Oil types, alternative 245
Oil types, suitable 245
Old batteries, disposal 259
Onboard Computer 118
Onboard Diagnostics OBD 250
Onboard literature, printed 43
Onboard vehicle tool kit 251
On-call service, see Roadside Assistance 261
Online Owner's Manual 45
Opening and closing 50
Opening, from inside 55
Operating menus, Central Information Display (CID) 20
Operation via the Controller 22
Operation via touchscreen 24
Optional equipment 7
Outside air, see Automatic recirculated-air control 181
Owner's Manual media 43
Owner's Manual, printed 43

P

Paint, vehicle 268
Panic alarm, see Panic mode 66
Panic mode 66
Panoramic glass sunroof 68
Parallel parking assistant 172
Park Distance Control PDC 166
Parked-car ventilation 183
Parked vehicle, condensation 207
Parking aid, see PDC 166
Parking assistant 172
Parking brake 93
Parking lights 128
Parts and accessories 8
Passenger's side mirror, tilting 80
Pathway lines, rearview camera 170
PDC Park Distance Control 166
Performance Control 155
Personal profile, see Driver profiles 61
Person warning with City light braking function 148
Picnic Bench 199
Plastic, care 269
Poor roads, driving on 207
PostCrash — iBrake 152
Power failure 259
Power windows 67
Prescribed engine oil types 245
Pressure, tires 222
Pressure warning, tires 142
Printed onboard literature 43
Profiles, see Driver profiles 61
Programmable memory buttons, Central Information Display (CID) 28
Protective function, glass sunroof 69

Protective function, windows 67
Push-and-turn reel, see Controller 21, 22

R

Racetrack operation 208
Radiator fluid 247
Radio-operated remote control, opening/closing 50
Radio-ready state 89
Radio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Rain sensor 96, 99
Ratchet straps 195
Rear lights 257
Rear seats 74
Rearview camera 169
Rear window defroster 178, 182
Recirculated-air filter 182
Recirculated-air mode 177, 181
Recommended fuel grade 221
Recommended tire brands 229
Refueling 218
Remaining range 115
Remote control, additional 53
Remote control, loss 53
Remote control, malfunction 53
Remote control, opening/closing 50
Remote control, replacing the battery 52
Remote control, universal 184
Replacing parts 251
Replacing the battery, remote control 52
Replacing wheels/tires 228
Reporting safety malfunctions 13
RES CNCL button, see Camera-based cruise control 158
RES CNCL button, see Cruise control 164
Reserve warning, see Range 115
Reset, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 138
Retreaded tires 229
Roadside Assistance 261
Roadside parking lights 129
Rolling code hand-held transmitter 185
RON recommended fuel grade 221
Roofliner 19
Roof load capacity 275
Roof-mounted luggage rack 207
Route, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
RSC Runflat System Component, see Runflat tires 230
Rubber components, care 269
Runflat tires 230

S

Safe braking 206
Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat 76
Safety belts 75
Safety belts, care 270
Safety locks, doors, and windows 87
Safety switch, windows 68
Safety systems, airbags 134
Saving fuel 209
Screen, see Control Display 20
Screwdriver 251
Sealant, see Mobility System 231
Seat heating, front 74
Seating position for children 83
Seat, see Memory function 79
Seats, front 71
Seats, rear 74
Securing cargo 195
Selection list in instrument cluster 118
Sensors, care 270
Service and warranty 9
Service requirements, Condition Based Service CBS 249
Service requirements, display 115
Servotronic 156
SET button, see Camera-based cruise control 158
SET button, see Cruise control 164
Settings, locking/unlocking 64
Settings, mirrors 79
Settings on the Control Display 32
Shift gate rotary switch 155
Shift paddles on the steering wheel 106
Shift point indicator, Head-up Display 125
Side airbag 134
Signaling, horn 16
Signals when unlocking 65
Sitting safely 71
Size 274
Slide/tilt glass roof 68
SMS, see Short messages, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
SMS text messages, supplementary 113
Snow chains 234
Socket 188

Socket, OBD Onboard Diagnostics 250
Software update 41
Sound output, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Spare tire, see Emergency wheel 239
Speed, average 119
Speed Limit Info 117
Speed Limit Info, Onboard Computer 120
Speed limits, display 117
Speed warning 121
Split screen 27
Sport displays 121
Sport displays, Head-up Display 125
SPORT program, driving dynamics 156
Sport program, transmission 105
Stability control systems 153
Standard equipment 7
Standard view, Head-up Display 123
Stars, MINIMALISM display 214
Start/stop, automatic function 90
Start/Stop button 88
Starting the engine 89
Stations, AM/FM, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Status control display, tires 138
Status information, Central Information Display (CID) 27
Status of Owner's Manual 7
Status, vehicle 126
Steering assistance 156
Steering wheel, adjusting 81
Steptronic Sport transmission, see Steptronic transmission 103
Steptronic transmission 103
Stopping the engine 90
Storage compartments 191
Storage, tires 230
Storing the vehicle 270
Stowing and securing cargo 195
Suitable devices 36
Suitable mobile phones 36
Summer tires, tread 227
Sun visor 188
Supplementary Owner's Manuals 43
Supplementary SMS text messages 113
Switch for driving dynamics 155
Switch, see Cockpit 16
Symbols 7
Symbols in the status field 27

T

Tachometer 114
Tailgate 58
Tailgate, closing with no-touch activation 57
Tailgate, opening with no-touch activation 57
Tailgate via remote control 52
Tail lights 257
Technical changes, see For Your Own Safety 8
Technical data 274, 276
Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Teleservices, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Temperature, air conditioner 177
Temperature, automatic climate control 179
Temperature display for external temperature 114
Temperature, engine 120
Terminal, starting aid 262
Theft alarm system, see Alarm system 65
Thigh support 73
Tilt alarm sensor 66
Tilting, passenger's side mirror 80
Time 32
Time of arrival 120
Tire damage 228
Tire identification marks 226
Tire inflation pressure 222
Tire inflation pressure monitor, see FTM 142
Tire pressure 222
Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 137
Tire repair kit, see Mobility System 231
Tires, changing 228
Tire sealant, see Mobility System 231
Tires, everything on wheels and tires 222
Tires, runflat 230
Tire tread 227
Tone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Tools 251
Total vehicle weight 275
Touchpad 26
Touchscreen 24
Towing 263
Tow-starting 263
TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 137
Traction control 154

TRACTION driving mode, driving dynamics 154
Traffic bulletins, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Transmission lock, releasing manually 107
Transmission, manual transmission 102
Transmission, see Steptronic transmission 103
Transporting children safely 83
Tread, tires 227
Trip computer 120
Triple turn signal activation 94
Trip odometer 114
Trip recorder, see Trip odometer 114
Turning radius lines, rearview camera 171
Turn signal, front 253, 256
Turn signal, side 258
Turn signals, operation 94
Turn signals, rear, bulb replacement 257

U

Unintentional alarm 66
Units of measurement 33
Universal remote control 184
Unlocking, automatic 64
Unlocking, settings 64
Updates made after the editorial deadline 7
Upholstery care 269
USB connection 38
USB interface, position in vehicle 189
USB port, see USB interface 189
Use, intended 8

V

Vanity mirror 188
Vehicle battery 258
Vehicle battery, replacing 259
Vehicle, break-in 204
Vehicle care 268
Vehicle care products 268
Vehicle features and options 7
Vehicle identification number 12
Vehicle jack 237
Vehicle paint 268
Vehicle status 126
Vehicle storage 270
Vehicle wash 267
Vehicle, washing 267
Ventilation 182
Ventilation, see Parked-car ventilation 183
VIN, see Vehicle identification number 12
Voice activation system 29
Voice command response, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

W

Warning and indicator lights, see Check Control 110
Warning displays, see Check Control 110
Warning messages, see Check Control 110
Warning triangle 261
Warranty 8
Washer fluid 101
Washer nozzles, windshield 97, 100
Washing the vehicle 267
Water on roads 205
Weights 275
Welcome lights 129
Welcome lights during unlocking 51
Wheel cleaner 269
Wheels, changing 228
Wheels, everything on wheels and tires 222
Wheels, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 142
Wheels, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 137
Window defroster, rear 178, 182
Windows, powered 67
Windshield cleaning system 95, 98
Windshield defroster 178, 182
Windshield washer fluid 101
Windshield washer nozzles 97, 100
Windshield wipers, fold-away position 97, 101
Windshield wipers, see Wiper system 95, 98
Winter storage, care 270
Winter tires, suitable tires 229
Winter tires, tread 227
Wiper blades, replacing 251
Wiper fluid 101
Wiper system 95, 98
Wireless charging dock, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Wireless charging, see Wireless charging, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Wood, care 269
Word match concept, navigation 24
Wrench 251

01402983567 ue

DRIVE ME.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402983567 - X/17